

INDEX

Page numbers in italic indicate substantive references

- A-group 269
 Abalessa 301, 306, 313, 334
 'Abbād 634
 'Abbās (uncle of Prophet) 521
 'Abbās b. Ibn Tūlūn 596
 'Abbasid agents 526, 599n.; army, army commander 601, 643; caliphate 7, 579, 602, 612, 633, 641, 647, 716; caliphs 589, 598, 599n., 609, 614, 620, 633, 638; *dawla*, revolution 522, 523, 525, 526, 529, 599, 602; empire, emperor 527, 599n., 602, 609; governors 523, 527; prefect 601; religious claims 522, 526, 529–30, 538, 602; victory 602, 603
 'Abbasids in Baghdad 570, 598; government 529, 600, 601n.; in Egypt 538; in North-West Africa 523, 526, 598, 602; 'golden age' 531; literature, poetry 598–9, 601, 602; position of *qādī* 531, 543
 al-'Abbāsiya fortress 528, 534, 535, 554
 'Abd al-'Ala b. Ḥudayj al-Ifriqī 518, 520
 'Abd Allah II (Kairouan) 598, 602
 'Abd Allāh Aḥmad Salim (b. Sulaym) al-Aswānī *see* al-Aswānī
 'Abd Allah b. 'Abd al-'Aziz 511
 'Abd Allah b. Ḥamād 630
 'Abd Allah b. Khaṭṭāb 643
 'Abd Allah b. Muḥammad al-Kātib, 'the secretary' 624 and n., 625, 626, 630
 'Abd Allah b. Sa'd b. Abī Sarḥ 505, 506, 507
 'Abd Allah b. Tāhir 534, 535, 544
 'Abd Allah b. Yāsīn al-Jazūlī *see* Ibn Yāsīn
 'Abd Allah al-Marisi, 'the southern Egyptian' 591
 'Abd al-'Aziz, governor of Egypt 504, 505, 512, 513, 514, 526; sons of 504, 521
 'Abd al-Ḥamid (Abū Layla Ishāq b. Muḥammad b. 'Abd al-Ḥamid) 525
 'Abd al-Ḥamid Aḥmad Ḥanafī (ed.) 680n.
 'Abd al-Malik (Umayyad ruler) 505, 507, 513
 'Abd al-Malik (Warfajjūma leader) 523
 'Abd al-Raḥmān I of Cordoba, 'al-Dākhil' 'the immigrant' 522, 544
 'Abd al-Raḥmān III of Cordoba 606, 611, 612, 614, 617, 623, 647
 'Abd al-Raḥmān (*mawlā*) 503
 'Abd al-Raḥmān b. Ḥabīb 520, 521, 522, 523, 641
 'Abd al-Raḥmān b. Rustam 523, 524, 553, 641
 'Abdullāh Jammā', 'the gatherer', 'Abdullabs 588
 'Abd al-Wadūd b. Aḥmad Mawhid al-Shamasdī 665n.
 'Abd al-Wahhāb 642, 643, 677
 'Abd al-Wāḥid b. Yazīd al-Hawwārī 520
 'Abd al-Wārith 522
 Abdyos 525
 Aberdare (Nyandarua) range 369
 'abid (sing. 'abd), slaves, slave troops 529, 545, 591, 629, 635, 639; 'abid *sūdān*, black slave troops 524, 593, 612, 624, 626, 627, 638, 639
 Abitina 465
 Abraham, king of Nubia 569
 Abraham, priest 560
 Abratoi 257
aktar, 'to cut short' 511; al-Abtar 510
 Abu 'Abd Allah, *dā'i* 599n., 600, 601n., 602, 603, 605, 606, 609, 610, 647
 Abū 'Abd Allah Muḥammad b. Tifāt = Tārashnā al-Lamtūnī 654
 Abū 'Abd al-Raḥmān al-Ṣūfī 533n.
 Abū'l-Bahār 626
 Abū Bakr b. 'Umar 654, 665, 666
 Abū'l-Fahm *dā'i* 625, 626
 Abū'l-Faraj 626
 Abu Geili 259
 Abū Ḥadarī 590
 Abu Hamed 99, 210, 217, 220, 244
 Abū Ḥanīfa 539, 540
 Abū Harmala al-Nūbī, 'the Nubian' 591
 Abū Ḥatīm 524
 Abū Ibrāhīm Aḥmad 544, 594
 Abū 'Imrān al-Fāsi 655, 656, 657, 658, 660, 665
 Abū 'Iqāl 589
 Abuja 330
 Abū'l-Khaṭṭāb 523, 645n.
 Abū Kurayb, *qādī* 531
 Abū'l Misk Kāfūr, 'musk camphor' *see* Kāfūr
 Abū Muslim 321, 322
abuna, metropolitan of Ethiopia 430

INDEX

- Abu Negila hills 574
 Abū'l Qāṣim Samghu b. Wāsūl al-Miknāsī 605, 645
 Abū'l Qāṣim b. 'Ubayd Allah, al-Qā'im, 'bringer of the resurrection' 603, 604, 606, 607, 608, 609, 610, 611
 Abū Qurra (caliph, Tlemcem), al-Ifrānī 524, 525, 526, 553, 605
 Abū Rikwa 628, 629
 Abū Rustam al-Nafūsi 644
 Abū Šālīḥ 558, 580, 582, 712
 Abu Simbel 216
 Abusir el-Melek 287
 Abū 'Ubayda 'Abd al-Ḥamid al-Janāwnī 643
 Abū Yazīd, Šāḥib al-Ḥimār, 'the man on a donkey', al-Ḥabashī'l Aswad, 'black Ethiop' 609, 610, 611 and n., 614, 618, 644, 657, 715
 al-Abwab 585
 Abyssinia 612; Abyssinian centre of agriculture 310
 acacia trees, wood 666, 668
 Acacius, patriarch of Constantinople, Aca-cian schism 441, 444
 Accra plain 347
 Achaemenes, *satrap* 101, 102
 Acheulian 14, 20, 30–5, 36, 69, 687, 688, 689; Lower, 30; Upper, 30, 31, 34
 Achilles, bishop 426
 Achilleus 424, 425
Aclypa sp. 349
Acrididae 276
 Acropolis (Zimbabwe) 387, 390
Acta Crispini 466
Acta Marci 412
Acts of the Apostles 224, 248
 Adams, W. Y. 243, 579, 584 and n., 698, 699, 712, 714
 addax 275
 Addi-Gelemo 265
 Adendan, nr Faras 578, 583
 Adegetali, king 230
 Adherbal 184, 185, 186
 al-'Adid, caliph 583
 Adikhalamani, king 222
 Adikran, king 111, 147
 Adjābiya 598
 Ad Maiores = Besseriani 204, 463
 administration: Arab empire 493, 494, 499, 500, 546; Muslim North Africa 624, 626, 693; Muslim Egypt 500, 515, 546, 547, 613, 619, 629; reforms, 515, in Carthage 130, 132, districts, *'rst* 130, in Christian Egypt 422, 424, 447, 463, monastic 442, in Christian North Africa 422, 463, 470, 482, 486, in Christian Nubia 574, 582, 583, in Ghana 668, in Hellenistic Egypt 151, 152, 154, in Nubia, Meroitic 210, 237; Roman Egypt 194, 195, 197, 206, 208; Roman North-West Africa 199, 208, 697; Roman empire 191, 207–8
 Ador, king 585
 Adrar, Mauritanian 276, 280, 316, 637, 646, 665
 Adrar Bous 73, 306, 307, 316
 Adrar of the Iforas 276, 280, 314–15, 316, 334, 644, 650
 Adrianopolis 198
 Adulis 156, 169, 196, 264, 266, 288, 430
 adultery 456
 'Adwat al-Andalusiyyīn, 'Andalusian bank' 553; 'Adwat al-Qarawiyyīn, 'Qayra-wānī bank' 553
 Adymachidai (Libyans) 98, 99, 100, 101, 102, 103, 142, 145, 147
 adzes 307 and n., 345
 Aegean Islands 107, 111, 149; cities 93
Aegyptopithecus zeuxis 16
 Aegyptus Herculia (E. Delta) 208
 Aegyptus Jovia (W. Delta with Alexandria) 208
 Aemilian, deputy prefect 420
 Aemilianus, emperor 202n.
Aethiopica (novel) 244, 256
 Afar rift 21, 687
 Afāriq (sing. Ifriqī) 489, 510, 512, 529, 549
 Afian 57
 Afikpo rock-shelter 332
 al-Aflāḥ b. 'Abd al-Wahhāb 642, 643, 677
Aframomum melegueta 313
Afri 129, 130, 132
 Africa, Germanic kingdoms 444; Christian (North-West) 468, 473; African church 473
 Africa, Roman province 175, 183, 186, 191, 199; Roman 'diocese' 208
 Africa Nova, 'New Africa', Roman province 187, 199
Africa Proconsularis (Africa and Africa Nova) 192, 199, 202, 204, 205, 208, 697; *see also* Proconsular Africa (Christian)
 Afro-Mediterranean peoples 344
 Afshīn, general 535
 Agades 321
 agates 48
 Agathocles 123, 129, 131, 144, 148, 165, 167, 168, 173
 agents, land 442
 Agesilaos, king 105
 al-Aghlab, Ibrāhīm 524, 639
 Aghlabid *amīr*, ruler 534, 535, 543, 593, 594, 602, 641–3, 647; army 596, 602;

INDEX

- city 554, 649; offensive 535, 551, 614;
slave-soldiers 638–9
- Aghlabids: fall 598, 603; in Ifriqiya 535,
551, 553, 601n., 605, 610, 624 and n.,
642; *qādī*, *fuqahā* 641, 643, 656; receive
refugees 550
- Aghmāt 554, 647, 663
- Agisymba 286, 300
- agricultural land, Cyrenaica 108, 109; agri-
cultural settlement, Fayum 154–5
- agricultural Libyans 143, 144
- agriculture: origins 2, 9–10, 381, 383, 700;
types, mixed farming 368, 376, 396;
subsistence 390, 486; *see also* farmers;
sedentary life
- Egypt 163, 257, 500; Ethiopia 262, 263;
North-West Africa 62, 129, 143, 144,
205, 486, 489, 550; Nubia 219, 220–1,
258, 556, 569; Sahara 275, 284, 301–14;
Sahel 666; Tafielt 649; Tripolitania
290; western Sudan 301–14
- agriculturalists: Iron Age 360–2, 374,
376; Stone Age 76, 80–2, 342, 344, 346,
349, 350
- aguellid*, 'king' 147
- Agoutour-Labiod cave 340
- Ahaggar (Hoggar) 276, 280, 301, 306, 316
- '*abd*', 'agreement' 502; '*abdan*', 'by compact'
493, 499
- ahl al-diwān*, 'men of the register' 515
- ahl Miṣr*, 'men of Egypt' 533
- ahl al-Sunna*, 'people of the Sunna' 538, 540
- Aḥmad b. 'Alī (Egypt) 621
- Aḥmad b. Ṭūlūn 579, 650, 715
- 'Aḥmose (Amasis) 96, 97, 98, 101, 111, 114,
692; mummy of 101
- Ain Ateuch 484
- Ain Beida, area west of 484
- 'Ain Fara 572
- Ain Ghorab 484
- Ain Miila 464, 472
- Āīr 276, 280, 306, 316, 322, 650; area west
of 337
- Aithiopr*, 'burnt-faced' 141
- Ajādbiya 621
- '*ajam*', 'non-Arab' 510, 511
- Ajayi, J. F. A. and Crowder, M. (eds.) 680n.
- Akhbār al-Zamān* 680 and n.
- akhmās*, 'fifths' 517
- Akhmīm 572, 579, 592, 620
- Akhratan, king 214
- Akillu 652
- Akindad, king 242, 248, 249, 250
- Akjoujt 320, 321, 322, 323, 324, 333, 335
- akori beads 295
- Akragas 168
- Aksum 196, 259–61, 268, 373, 431, 443,
448; town 263, 264, 265; kings 263,
430; palace 264; Aksum/Meroe contact
265
- aku apple (*Blighia sapida*) 313
- Alans 479
- Alaric 474
- Alazeir 112, 116
- Albany industry 64
- Albertini, E. 478n., 697
- Albinus, Publius Ceionius 470
- Albulae 484
- Album* of Timgad 470
- alcephaline antelopes 39
- Aleppo 601, 609, 612, 618, 621
- Alexander III, 'the Great' 106, 107, 114,
125, 150, 151; conquest of Egypt
105–6, 113, 227, 692; cult 150, 151;
death 106, 148, 149; elephants 155;
empire 107, 149; visit to Siwa 106, 115,
150, 288
- Alexander IV 148, 149
- Alexander, bishop 427, 428, 429
- Alexander's Isle village 419
- Alexandre, P. 406n.
- Alexandria: cults 150, 154; factions 497,
533, 534; intellectual centre 6, 8, 132–3,
160, 253, 695; mob, popular rising 161,
162, 206, 239, 240, 443, 445; municipal
institutions 194, 421, 431
- people 7, 152; Christians 7, 414, 416, 419,
420, 421, 426; Egyptians 417; Greeks
154, 158, 160, 162, 196, 267, 373, 415,
416; Jews 7, 152, 196, 411, 412, 414;
region 591, 620
- Ptolemaic 106, 152, 157, 159, 160, 162;
Roman 247, 421–30; Persian 3, 449;
Christian church, episcopal see, patri-
archate 7, 421, 428–46, 495, 496, 505,
577; Chalcedonian patriarch 446, 447,
448, 449, 451; Coptic patriarch 430,
432, 436, 448, 451; Arab conquest 496,
497, 499; Muslim 589, 593, 603, 608,
622, 623, 628; Andalusians 533, 534,
549, 551
- synod 431, 432
- Algeria 118, 146, 307n.; coast to west of
Algeria 478n.; eastern 59, 507; plateau
35, 73, 471, 516, 523, 525; south, south-
west 313, 317; west 523; Mali/Algeria
frontier 309
- Algiers 606; Icosium, 128
- 'Alī, caliph 505, 521, 526, 538, 590, 591,
599, 657; 'Alids 521; 'Alawī 591, 592,
603, 609, 627
- 'Alī (brother of Unūjūr) 620
- 'Alī Bābā, king of Beja 578
- 'Alī b. Ḥamdūn 606, 611

INDEX

- 'Ali b. Humayd 539
 'alim see 'ulamā'
 Alimen, M. H. 16n., 686
 Allais, Y. 471n.
 Allaqi goldmines, Wadi Allaqi 95, 99, 530, 536, 593, 594, 619
 Allchin, F. R. 349n.
 allegiance 594, 625
 allegory 414, 415
 allies, North-West Africa 512, 517, 523
 Allison, P. A. 302n.
 Almanzor (al-Manṣūr) 625, 628; sons of 627, 628
 Almeria 614, 617
 Almohads 8
 Almoravid movement, Almoravids 717–18; conquests, fighting 662, 663, 664, 683; dynasty 718; leaders 655, 658, 665; origins 558, 654, 657, 665, 717; Sudan before Almoravids 667, 670, 676
 Alodia see 'Alwa
 alphabet, alphabetic script: Greek 267, 574; Latin 203; Meroitic 255, 574; Nubian 574; Numidian 185 and n.; Phoenician 185 and n.; *tifinagh* 185 and n.
 Alps 172
 Altaner, B. and Stüber, A. 704
 Altars of Philaios 109, 121, 123, 127
 Altava 470n., 484
 Alvares (missionary) 587
 'Alwa, Soba = Alodia 447, 448, 536, 561, 563, 566, 578, 585, 587–8; king 585
 Alypius, bishop 476
 Amājūr 596
 Amaniastabarqa, king 214
 Amanibakhi, king 214, 226
 Amanikhabale, king 230, 246
 Amanikhalih, king 230
 Amanikhatashan, queen 230
 Amani-nataki-lebte, king 214
 Amani-nete-yerike, king 214, 218, 221, 222
 Amanirenas, queen 242, 248, 249, 250
 Amanishakete, queen 230, 246, 248, 249, 250; chapel 243
 Amanislo, king 227, 230, 240
 Amanitaraqide, king 230
 Amanitare, queen 230, 251, 252, 253, 254, 255
 Amani . . . tekha? (king) 230
 Amanitenmemide, king 230
 Amanzi Springs 689
 Amara East temple 250, 252
 Amari, M. 535n.
 Amasis 217
 Amazon basin 346
 Amba people 405
 ambassador 581, 584, 635
 amber 276
 Ambrose, bishop 474, 475
 ambulatory 570
 Amekni 303n.
 Amenemhat, king 233
 Amenophis III, pharaoh 227
 America, Amerinds, pre-Columbian 318, 324, 331
 Amguid 318
 'amil, financial controller 515, 517, 527, 546, 589, 590, 592, 593, 607; representative 643
 Amin b. Hārūn al-Rashid 533
 Amin al-Dawla Hasan b. 'Ali Mulhim 635
 amir: Almoravid 662; Barce 631, Cordoba 602, Ifriqiya, Kairouan 534, 539, 542n., 546, 594, 598, 602; Sijilmasa 646; tribal 654
 'Amir b. Nāfi' 550n.
 Amir al-Mu'minin, 'Commander of the Faithful' 502, 505, 604
 Amkoumjdjo 329
 'amma, 'populace' 617
 Ammaedara (Haidra) 199, 466, 486
 Ammon (= Amun-Re') 115, 132, 145–6; see also Zeus Ammon
 Ammoni (people of Siwa) 98
 Ammonius Saccas 418
 amn, amān, 'safety, safe-conduct' 501, 511
 amoebic dysentery 343
 amoraim, 'scholars' (Jewish) 530
 Amoun 428
 amphitheatres 202
 amphorae 267, 567, 569, 570
 'Amr b. al-'Āṣ 496, 497, 499, 503, 505, 506, 507, 564, 565, 590; mosque 501
 'Amr b. al-Waḍḍāḥ 504
 amṣār (sing. *miṣr*), 'garrison cities' 501, 502, 503, 505, 600
 Amtalqa, king 214, 326
 amulets, faience 234, 236
 Amun-Re', Egypt 89n., 115, 149, 150; priest, priestess 89 and n., 91; Siwa 106, 115; temple, Kharga 101; Nubia: Meroe 231, 239, 251, 254; Napata 216, 221, 222, 224, 231, 238; Naqa 252, 254
 Amy, king 585
 Amyntas 106
 Amyrtaios (Amonortais) 102; 2nd Amyrtaios 104
 Analmaye, king 214, 217
 Anastasius, emperor 441, 442, 443
 Anathemas, the Twelve 426, 437
 Anatis (Oum er-Rbia) 299
 Anbiya 340, 645, 651
 Anchmachis 157
 Andalus: Arab conquest 513, 516, 521; fleet,

INDEX

- 611; governor 520; Umayyads 522, 598, 612, 625, 628
- Andalusians 545, 550, 551, 555; refugees 533, 534, 549, 551, 645; sources 615
- Andrae, T. 710
- Andreas, bishop 576
- Andrews, P. and Walker, A. 16n.
- Andros, naval battle 149
- anem*, 'south' 680
- Anfrey, F. 263n.
- Angola 62, 65, 80, 401, 702; hinterland 403; northern 401; savanna 363; southern 374, 375, 396
- anili* (pennisetum) 314
- animal husbandry 315–18, 550, 700, 701; *see also under* cattle *etc.*
- animal resources 67
- animals for games 189, 204, 290, 295, 301
- Ankara 250
- Ankermann, B. 702
- ankh* (symbol) 243
- Ankole 368
- Anlamani, king 213, 216
- annona*, supplies in kind 207, 425, 458
- Antalas, king 485
- antelopes 39, 43, 51, 52, 53, 65, 76, 272; swamp antelopes 67
- Anthimus, patriarch 445, 446
- Anthony, B. 687
- Anti-Atlas 300
- Antigonos 149, 150, 288
- antinomianism 607
- Antinoopolis 194
- Antioch, Antiochenes 160, 419, 420, 620, 622, 623; clergy 468; episcopal *see* 428, 432, 433, 446; orthodoxy 431, 436; patriarch 437, 444
- Antiochos III 157, 158, 159, 174; Antiochos IV 159
- Antony (Mark Antony) 163, 190
- Antony, St 423, 424 and n., 426 and n., 428, 431, 434, 439
- Anulinus, proconsul 465
- 'anwatan*, 'by force' 493, 499
- Apedemek, lion god 223, 228, 253, 259, 564
- apes 19, 20, 82
- Aphilas 264
- Aphrodite (village) 442
- Aphrodito papyri 501, 709
- Apion *see* Ptolemy Apion
- Apis, bull god, Apis bulls 101 and n., 106, 154, 316
- Apis rock 687
- Apocalypse of Peter 455; apocalyptic teaching 455, 472
- Apollinaris, patriarch 448
- Apollinarius, bishop 432, 436, 440
- Apollonia (Marsa Susa) = Sozusa 108, 114, 505
- Apollo 412
- apostacy 456
- Appian 118n., 179 and n., 693, 695
- Appius Sabinus 423 and n.
- Apries (Ha'a'ibre', Hophra) 96
- apse 559
- Apuleus 203, 452
- Aqiq 245
- Aqrakamani, king 230
- aquatic resources 77–8
- Aquae Thibilitanae (Hamman Meskoutine) 462, 463n.
- aqueducts 202
- Aquila bible 418
- Arab conquests, invasions: Aksum 264; Egypt 5, 209, 428, 431, 448, 449, 495–9, 711; North-West Africa 410, 411, 488, 489, 505–13, 637, 656; Nubia 558, 564–9, 580
- Arab origin, descent 545, 581; penetration of Nubia 588; religion 491
- Arabia 5, 7, 17, 70, 245, 246, 287, 316, 533; desert 319; eastern 600; governor 419; South Arabia 81, 86, 156, 260, 262, 286, 293, 362, 430; south-west 156, 164, 264, 620
- 'Arabia' (E. bank of Nile) 499
- Arabic sources 268, 313, 314, 317, 662, 667, 680, 682–3; chronicles (N. African) 488; geographers 645, 667, 674; literature 492, 615
- Arabio 187, 188, 199
- Arabization 8, 545, 588, 684
- Arabs: in Aswan area 589; in Awdaghust 652; in Hawf, Eastern 515, 533, 534, 537, Western 591, 620; in north-western Africa 551; in Palestine 629
- period of arrival 9, 284, 289, 291, 292, 497, 502, 504, 545; tribesmen 536; troops, auxiliaries 288, 551, 657; seafarers 314; *see also under* traders
- Arakakamani, king 226, 228, 230, 240, 241
- arboriculture 129, 133, 144, 182
- archaeology *see under* evidence
- archaism (Saite) 91
- archdeacon, *archidiaconus* 464
- archers, archery *see under* weapons
- Archimedes screw 155
- architecture: Aksum 262–3; Christian Nubia 558, 570, 579, 713, 714; Meroitic 213; Muslim 494, 544–5, 712; Sahelian 340; stone 94
- Arcobarzanes 162
- areae*, Christian cemeteries 459
- Ares, god 261, 265

INDEX

- Aretnide, king 231
 al-Argar culture 319, 320
 Argo (Pnubs) 222, 225
arguellid (Berber title) 177
 Arguin island 137, 293
 Arian Christianity, Christians 480–2, 485;
 controversy 419, 427, 428
 Arikakhatani 252, 254
 Arikhankharer 251, 252, 253
 Aristides, Aelius 297
 aristocracy: Egypt 439, 504, 512, 515, 548;
 North-West Africa, Christian 470,
 478n., 480, 482, Muslim 511, 517, 520,
 597, 598, 626, 635; *jund* 534, 535; Spain
 520
 Ariston 113
 Aristotle 122, 284
 Aristoteles 'Battos' 110
 Aritenyesbekhe, king 230
 Arius 7, 426–8, 429
 Arkell, A. J. 288n., 295n., 327, 690, 692,
 695, 696, 698, 713
 Arkesilas of Cyrene 110; Arkesilas II
 Chalepos, 'the cruel' 111; Arkesilas III,
 112; Arkesilas IV, 112, 113
 Arles, Council of 468
 Armant 579
 Armenia 247, 445
 Armstrong, A. L. 688
 Armstrong, R. G. 315 and n.
 army: Byzantine north Africa 485; caliph's
 527, 536, 607
 Carthaginian 125, 169, 170, 171, 177;
 conscription, recruitment 124, 125,
 130, 131, 145, 169, 178; generals 125,
 cavalry 125, 131, 167, 168, 170,
 chariots 125; infantry 125, 130; war
 elephants 125, 167, 168, 173
 Egypt 515, 597, 609; commanders 603;
 recruitment, exclusion 151–2, 589;
 ethnic groups 156, 157, 166, 591;
 infantry 157; war elephants 156–7
 North-West Africa 464, 516, 524, 598,
 622, 628, 629; Numidia 181, 183; 'of
 Hercules' 177; Roman 181, 186, 192,
 199
 Arnekhmani, king 226, 228, 230, 241, 253;
 chapel 254
 Arnobius 463
aroura (land measure) 423, 434 and n., 442
 Arqamani (? = Ergamanes) 228, 230, 241;
 chapel 242
 Arrian 692
 Arron, king 574
 arrows *see under* weapons
arroyos 312
 Arsenius, bishop 430
 Arsinoe, queen 149, 150, 155
 Arsinoe, town 166, 446
 Arsinoite nome 155, 194, 423
 art, artists, artistic tradition: Byzantine 570;
 Caspian 60; Egyptian 91, 695; North-
 West Africa 60, 550; Nubia 227, 558,
 563, 564, 572, 576; rock (South
 African) *see under* rock art
 Artaxerxes III of Persia 105
 Aryamami, king 226, 227
 Aryandes, *satrap* 99 and n., 112, 114
 Aryans 278
 Aryesbekke, king 231
 Asad b. al-Furāt, *qādī* 534, 539, 543
 Asadiya 539
 al-Aṣṣāgh b. 'Abd al-'Azīz 504, 513
 Asbystai 108, 111, 116, 142, 147
 asceticism, ascetics, Christian 414, 417, 418,
 428, 429, 475, 552; St Antony 423, 424;
 Jewish 414; Muslim 532, 637, 659, 660,
 661
 al-Aṣṣar, 'the yellow' 518
 Ashinās, Ashnās = Anitās 511, 514, 546
 Ashinās (Turkish official) 356
 Ashir 606, 611, 623, 624, 625, 626, 627
 Ashmunayn 495
 Ashurbanipal 325
 Asia 3, 6, 16, 144; area of, south-east 351,
 404, 405, west, south-west 54, 303,
 325, 352; Roman wars 181
 Asia Minor 87, 149, 150, 152, 155, 158, 163,
 324, 456, 463
 Asian auxiliaries 199; metallurgy 319; plants
 81, 312, 314
 Askalis, son of Iphtha 189
 al-'Askar, 'the army' 527
 Asklepias, god of healing 154
 Asna 549, 592
 Aspelta, king 213, 214, 216, 217, 218, 221,
 225, 254
 ass *see* donkeys
 assassination 517, 526
 Asselar 68, 336
 Assembly (Carthage) 119, 122
 Assyria 2, 89, 90, 91, 94, 95, 107, 288, 325,
 691
 Assyrian helmet 325
 Assyrian invasion 210, 325
 Astarte, goddess 132, 133
 astronomy, astronomers 6, 630
 Aswan 567, 579, 583, 584, 585, 586, 621;
 land, region 259, 268, 302, 500, 536,
 566, 589, 593, 613; south of 572
 Aswan high dam 74, 78, 268, 556
 al-Aṣwānī ('Abd Allāh Aḥmad b. Sulaym
 al-Aṣwānī) 579, 712
 'a/a, 'pay' 535

INDEX

- Atbara r. = Takezze 218, 260
 Aterian 35, 36, 39 and n., 42, 43, 59
 Ateye (= Sedenga) 257
 Athenaios 127n., 284
 Athenasius, bishop 7, 428–33, 437, 472, 704, 705, 708; Athenasius II 441
 Athens, Athenians 102, 410, 455; Athenian fleet 102
 Atlansera, king 213
Atlantibropos 35
 'Atlantic' influences 323
 Atlantic coast 405, 625, 628, 646, 648, 675; *see also under* Morocco
 Atlantic ocean 637
 Atlantic navigation 292–3, 323; voyages 133–40, 292–3, 296–300; *see also individual explorers*
 Atlas region 59, 75, 143, 463, 513, 649, 658; eastern 75; High 320, 553, 554 and n., 595; middle 553; Moroccan 516, 525; Saharan 201
al-Atrāk, 'Turks' 529
 Atriye monastery 439
 Attabubu 295
 Attic pottery 244
 aubergines 314
 audience, royal (Ghana) 669
 Augila (Audjila) 144
 Augustine, St 7, 410, 472, 473–8, 479, 704; writings 203n., 462n., 471, 472n., 477n., 479n., 707; theological tradition 482
 Augustus, emperor (= Octavian, Caesar Octavian) 191, 192, 194, 195, 199, 202, 247, 258; statue, bronze head 246, 247, 250
 Aurelian, emperor 468
 Aurelius, bishop 476, 478, 479
 Aurelius Diogenes 419
 Aures mountains and area 199, 201, 208, 463, 479, 484, 507; mountaineers 479, 483, 485, 595, 610, 611, 623
 Aurigemma, S. 697
 Auschisai 116, 142
 Austin, M. M. 692
 Australopithecines 14, 17, 19, 20, 21–4 and n., 84, 689, 690
Australopithecus africanus 23 and n., 24n., 689; *A. boisei* 23, 24 and n.; *A. robustus* 23, 24 and n., 689
 authenticity of faith 530
 Autoleles 143n.
autopracts (self-governing estates) 500
 auxiliaries, *auxilia* 192, 199; in Mauritania 199; in North-West Africa 206; Numidian 184, 200; Spanish, Gallic, Asian 199
 Auza 118
avalaneyra (plantain) 314
 Awdaghust 618, 646, 649, 654, 659, 662; Ghana rule 653, 663, 666, 670; king 652, 653, 655; merchants 618–19, 643, 650, 651; routes 618, 644, 645, 648, 649, 665
 Awgham 653
 Awkar 304, 305n.
 Awlil 648
 awls 37
 Awraba people 526
 axes: bronze 319
 stone 65, 345, 346, 347; flaked and polished, ground 62, 82, 347, 350; percussion-flaked 65; 'waisted' 347
a'yan, notables 547
 'Aydhab, nr Berenice 536, 573, 584, 585
 Ayyubids 579, 583, 584
 Ayzaraj 525
 Azelik 322
 'azim, 'king' 566
 Aziris 107
 'Aziz b. Mu'izz 624, 625, 626, 628
 Azraqi, 'blue', Kharijites, al-Azraq 518
azzel, 'iron' 133
 Baal Hammon, sun deity 132, 184, 203, 454, 485
 Bab el-Korosko *see* Korosko
 Bab el-Mandeb 16, 76, 156, 195
 baboon, giant 34
 Babylon 95, 96, 97, 98, 120, 691
 Babylon fortress (Egypt) 496, 497, 501, 515, 527, 548
 'Babylon' (figurative) 475
 Bacax, god 462–3 and n.
 Bachwezi dynasty 368
 backed tools 59, 64, 65
 Badari 318; Badarian 76
 Bādis b. Maṣṣūr, *sultān* 626, 627, 628, 629, 630, 631
 Baga 188
 Bagai: battle 472; bishop 472; Council 476; town 483
 Baghdad: caliphs 577, 633, 634, 638; city 490, 526, 535, 578, 598, 601, 608, 623, 716; court 667, 677; factions 541; government 528, 535, 599n., 602, 604, 612, 621; patriarch 577; persecution 539; style 580
 Bahr al-Ghazal r. (E. Sudan) 405
 Bahriya 582
 bailiffs (Egypt) 536
 Baillaud, G. 291 and n., 327 and n.
 Bakales 116, 142
 Baker, H. G. 302n., 312 and n., 700, 701

INDEX

- bakl* = 'barter' 505
 Bakhsh, S. K. and Margoliouth, D. S. (trans.) 533n., 710
 Bakkār b. Qutayba *qādī* 596
 Bakker, E. M. van Zinderen 14n., 685–6
 al-Bakrī 684, 709, 716; on Almoravids 655–6 and n., 659 and n., 660 and n., 661, 662 and n., 717; on Awdaghust 313, 618, 619, 644n., 649 and n., 653 and n., 665; on camels 700; on Ghana 340, 667, 668 and n., 669 and n., 670 and n., 671 and n., 674, 716; on Gao/Kawkaw 678 and n., 716; Kanem 680, 681 and n.; on Malel 671–2 and n.; on North Africa 553n., 615, 658 and n., 715; on sheep and goats 317, 318; on Saharan routes 648; on Sijilmasa 644n.; on Takrur 675 and n., 716; on 'Tātentāl' 648, 652; on Yūnis 555
 al-Balādhurī 528, 558, 564, 565 and n., 567, 708, 709
 Balazma 597
 Balbus, Cornelius 284, 286 and n.
 Balearic islands 124, 125, 481
 Bali people 404
 Balj b. Bashr 520
 Balkans 152
 Ballana culture (= X-group) 269, 270; burial mounds 270, 271, 556, 560, 563
 balm 288
 Balout, L. 278n., 686, 700
 Bamako 302, 347
 Bambandyanalo 389, 594
 Bambata Cave 688; complex 40, 47
 Bambotus (= Noun) 299
 Bambouk 139, 667, 669, 671, 676
 banana 351, 402, 403
 Banda people 406
 banditry 160
 Baniurac 143n.
 banking, bankers 155, 422
 Bantu Africa 10, 342–409, 701–4; coastal 403; forest 406–7; frontier 366, 406; savanna 407; southern, south-eastern 395, 408, 409
 Bantu-speaking peoples 351, 366, 368, 374, 375–6, 392, 396, 404, 406, 407; *see also* under languages
 Banū 'Abd al-'Aziz 527; *see also* 'Abd al-'Aziz
 Banū 'Abd al-Ḥakam 538; *see also* Ibn 'Abd al-Ḥakam
 Banū'l-'Abdūn 621
 Banū Hammād 627
 Banū Hilāl 621, 632, 633, 634, 636, 639, 683, 684
 Banū Ifrān (Yafrān) 605, 626, 663, 664
 Banū Kanz 585, 586
 Banū Khaṭṭāb 617, 643
 Banū Khazrūn 625, 627, 630, 632, 633
 Banū Massūfa *see* Massūfa
 Banū Midrār 525, 553, 605, 606, 614, 625, 645
 Banū Mudlij 591
 Banū Qurra 620, 621, 628, 629, 630, 633
 Banū Umayya 504, 505; *see also* Umayyads
 Banū Wārith 637
 Banū Ya'la 627
 baptism, re-baptism 461, 468, 469, 475, 487n.
 baptistries 478, 486
baql, treaty 505, 506, 536, 565, 567, 577, 579, 584, 585
 Baradez, J. 697
barānis (sing. *burnus*), burnous 511
 Barānis 510, 511
 Barbar 510, 511, 512, 517, 518, 549, 551
 al-Barbari 608
 barbarian kingdoms, Europe 483
 'barbarians', North Africa 479
 Barber, C. R. and Stern, S. M. 710
 Barce: Persians 98, 99; Greeks 108, 109, 110, 111, 112, 113; Libyans 114, 115, 116; Ptolemaic 164; Arab 505, 589; submission 506; route, Tripoli/Egypt 507, 512, 596, 608, 622; under Egypt 593, 603; Kutāma invasion 603; Fatimid governor 627, 628; Abū Rikwa 629; Banu Qurra and Zirids 629, 630, 631, 633, 634; trade 630, 631
 Bareng rulers 368
 Barghawāta 9, 555, 609, 625, 658
 Baringo, lake 369
 bark 360
 Barkal, Jebel Barkal: burials 210, 211, 213, 216, 227, 242, 248, 250; chapel 233; lions 227; pyramids 226, 227, 238, 242; temples 211, 216, 217, 221, 224, 238, 239
 barley 9, 60, 71, 78, 464
 Barnes, T. D. 455n., 707
 'Barnis' 510
 Barqajāna 644
 'Barr' 510
 Bartare, queen 230, 241, 248
 barter 80, 125, 301; *see also* 'silent trade'
 Barya 260
barzel, 'iron' 133
 Bashārūd 535, 547
 Basi, king 669
basileus, 'king' 119, 176
 basilica 478 and n., 480; basilican style (Nubia) 570
 Basilides 415

INDEX

- Basiliscus 440
basiliskos, 'kinglet' 271
 Baskakeren, king 214
 baskets, basketry 60, 360
 Basra (Iraq) 641
 Basra (Morocco) 625, 628
 Bassari (Senegal) 338
 Basset, R. 717
 Bates, O. 185n., 694
 bath (Meroe) 239
 Bathily, A. 717
 baths, public (North-West Africa) 202, 458, 483, 486
 Batoka highlands, plateau 381, 384
 Battiadai, Battiad dynasty 110-13, 692, 693
battos? = king 110, 147
 Battos I, king 110; Battos II Eudaimon, 'the prosperous' 110, 111, 112; Battos III 111; Battos IV Kalos, 'the handsome' 112-13; Battos, son of Arkesilas IV 113
 Bauchi plateau 301, 330, 338; tin on 322, 323
 Baumann, H. and Westermann, D. 338 and n.
 Bavares 206, 458
bay'a, 'homage' 401-2
 Bāyakkbak 591, 592
Bayān see Ibn 'Idhārī
 Baybars, Sultan 584, 585
bayt al-māl, treasury 660, 662
 Bayuda desert 219, 222, 266
 beads: Abalessa 301; Bantu Africa 394, 398, 408; Egypt 323; Guinea 295; Meroe 236, 243; Stone Age 58-9, 60
 beans, beans and peas 80, 81, 402, 404; vocabulary 315
 Beaufaict, A. de Calonne 405 and n.
 Becker, C. H. 514 and n., 536, 547 and n., 548 and n., 590, 710, 711
 beduin, 'people of the countryside' 8, 502, 548, 620, 630
 beer (millet) 314
 Bega 260
 Begarawiya (Meroe) 230
 Begemder 71, 262
 behaviour patterns 12, 24-30, 34, 35
 Beja (North-West Africa, Merdjerda valley) 616, 629
 Beja people (Red Sea Hills) 256n., 268, 280, 356, 558, 573, 578, 579
 Bel, A. 717
 Belalis Major 509
 Belisarius 485
 Bell, H. I. 500n., 694, 696, 705, 709, 711;
 Bell, H. I. and Skeat, T. C. 414n., 704
 Bellefonds, Linant de 699
 'Belly of the Rocks' (Nubia) 584
 Bemba 384
 Bembe people 404
 Benghazi (= Berenice) see Euhesperides
 Benin 338
 Benjamin, patriarch 450, 451, 496, 499
 Bentia 679
 Benue/Niger area 348
 Berber town (E. Sudan) 237
 Berbers 146, 489, 518, 520, 545; ancestral 83; Islam 8, 9, 341, 656; North-West Africa 484, 488, 489, 506, 507, 512, 641, 660; Romano-, sub-Roman 664, 684-5; Sahara 8, 290, 291, 339, 554, 644, 663; Sahel, Sudan 649, 650, 669, 679, 680; soldiers 9, 513, 608; Tripolitania 595, 609; west of Alexandria 604, 620; see also under languages
 Berchem, M. van 618n.
 Bercher, L. (ed.) 650n.
 Berenice (Benghazi) 165, 166, 198
 Berenice (Red Sea port) 245, 536
 Berliet-Chad expedition 307n., 308n.
 Berthier, André *et al.* 464 and n., 466n., 706-7
 Bes (god) 146, 265
 Besa 433n., 439
 Besaka, lake 69
 Beschouch, A. 462n.
 Bessieriani see Ad Maiores
 Beti people 406
 Betica (Spain) 321
 Bevan, E. R. 695
 Bible 287; Coptic 425; Hebrew 452; Hexapla 417-18
 biblical Christianity 417, 421, 424, 431, 464
 Bida snake 673
 bifaces, bifacial stone tools 33, 34, 35; core-axes 49; core-scrapers 49; knives 86; lanceolate forms 42
 Bigo 369; see also under pottery
 Biharian fauna 30n.
Bilād al-Islām 658; see also *Dār al-Islām*
bīmaristān (hospital) 593
 biome, tropical 14, 17-18, 76
 bipedal locomotion 19, 20
 Bir el-Kahena, battle 489
 Bira people 404
 birds 53; see also wildfowl
 Birley, A. 697
 Biru (= Walata) 637
 Bisa 384
 Biscay, Bay of 121
 Bishange 367
 Bishop, W. W. 17n.; and Clark, J. D. 278n., 302n., 349n., 388n., 685, 700, 703; and Miller, J. A. (eds.) 13n., 14n., 685

INDEX

- bishops 411; Donatist 473, 476; Eastern 428, 429; Egypt 416, 428, 429; Ethiopia 572; North-West Africa 458, 459, 460, 462n., 477, 480n., 481, 482, 485; Nubia 575, 581, 583, 587; Numidia 462, 467; Rome 459
- Biskra *see* Vescera
- Bisson, M. 380n.
- bity*, king of Lower Egypt 147
- Bizerta *see* Hippo
- black communities: Ifriqiya 638, 643, 644; Sahara, Sudan 665, 666, slaves 638, 639; black sedentaries 663, 665; black troops 529, 583, 592, 593; *see also* *sūdān*
- Black Sea 450
- blacksmiths 327, 333, 334n., 679; Jewish 334; status 338
- Black Stone 608, 611, 614
- Black Volta 347
- blades (stone tools) 37n., 40, 42, 43, 54; blade type, small 48, 54, 58, 61, 64, large 59, backed 59; blade core technique 47–8; blade technology 42 and n., 43
- Blaesus, Junius, *proconsul* 286
- Blaudin de Thé, cdt 719
- Blemmyes: Beja ancestors 268, 270; defeat 271, 447; help 561; nomads 246; raids 194, 206, 208, 268, 424, 556; subsidy 209
- Blighia sapida* (Aku apple) 319
- bloodshed, sin of 456
- Blue Nile 259, 266, 563, 588
- Boardman, J. 94n., 691, 692
- boats, boat-building 373, 374, 402; *see also* canoes
- boats, invasion 225; sacred 255
- Bocchus, king 186, 187, 188, 189; Bocchus II 187, 189–90; 'kingdom of Bocchus' 299
- Bochianga 272
- Bodmer papyri 705
- Bogud, son of Bocchus 187, 189; Bogud II 189–90
- bolons* 312
- Bombo Kaburi 371
- Bomilcar 122, 123
- Bond, G. 688
- Bone *see* Hippo Regius
- bone industry 60, 64, 77, 302; tools, handles 60, 307, 327, 329
- bones: animal 221; cattle 316, 317; human 60; waste 26, 28, 39, 66, 73n.
- Boniface, Count 479, 485
- Bonneville, R. 14n.
- Bonwetsch, N. (ed.) 454n.
- books 152, 617
- booty 507, 513, 517, 555, 565, 660; *see also* captives; *bay'a*
- Border Cave 53
- bored stones 65
- Borku/Koro Toro area 328
- Bornu 683
- Bos africanus* 316; *B. brachyceros*, *B. ibericus* 316; *B. indicus* 316; *B. taurus* 316, 317
- 'Boskopoid' 68
- Bosphorus 427, 438
- Botswana 375
- Bouchier, E. S. 697
- Boulé*, city council 421
- boundary demarcation 183
- Boure 340, 671
- Bourem 284
- Bouveignes, O. de 295n.
- Bovidae 273
- Bovill, E. W. 204n., 289 and n., 290, 295n., 697, 718
- bowmen 339
- bracelets, bronze 320; stone 347
- Brachiarra deflexa* 305
- Brachystegia* woodland 380
- Brain, C. K. 17n.
- brain-size 19–20
- Brasseur, P. 719
- Breasted, J. H. 691
- Brett, M. 542n., 554n., 618n., 627n., 632n., 633n., 712, 715, 718
- Breuil, H., Cabu, F. and Van Riet Lowe, C. 687
- bribery, corruption 162, 174, 436
- brick: broken 559; red 580; sun-dried 234, 236, 237, 559; vault 570; wedge-shaped 567
- brigandage 195, 291, 292, 650
- Briggs, L. Cabot 335n., 701
- Brignon, J., Amin, A. *et al.* 711
- Brisson, J. P. 757
- Britain 117, 431, 468, 484
- Brits 393
- Brittany 117, 121
- Broederstroom, nr Brits 393
- Brogan, O. 204n., 697
- Broken Hill (Kabwe) 35
- bronze 2, 224, 318, 319, 320; bronze smelting 145
- objects 270, 292, 318; anklets 145; bowls 265; heads, 252; tools, weapons 90, 94, 319, 320, 324, 325; vases 319
- Bronze Age: North African 332; north-western Africa 319; northern Ethiopia 362
- Brooks, C. E. P. 13n.
- Brooks, E. W. (trans.) 439n., 444n., 713
- Broom, R. 689

INDEX

- Broughton, T. R. S. 697
 Brown, P. R. L. 707, 708
 Brunschvig, R. 489n., 492 and n., 638n., 710, 711
 Bubastis 92
bucellarii, retainers 442
 Budu people 404
 Buea 295
 buffalo 52, 316; giant 53, 58, 60
 buffer zone (Ghana/Silla Takrur) 671
 Buganda, western 368
 Buguru 406
 Buḥayra 630
 Buhen 95, 216, 278n.
 Buhlūl b. Rāshid 532, 545
 building, buildings: Aksum 262; Awdaghust 649; domed 668; early Muslim 596; Iron Age 360; Kumbi Saleh, Ghana 668, 674; North-West Africa 454, 463, 483; Nubia 242, 556, 557, 570; stone and acacia 262, 668, 674; Tegdaoust 649
 Bukoba 364
 Būlāq, (ed.) 709
 bullion, silver 125
 bullocks 585
 bulrush millet 71
 Bulu people 406
 Buluggīn b. Zīrī 611, 623, 624, 625, 627, 628; brothers 627
 Bu Njem 201, 206
 Buonaiuti, E. 708
 bureaucracy 99, 194, 195, 425, 463
 Burgundy 483
 burial: Stone Age 53, 60, 69, 350; Early Iron Age 386; Cyrenaica 116; Igbo Ukwu 338; Meroe 233–4, 698; Napata 211, 231; Nubia (Christian) 556, 557, 560, 564, 577
 burial of Alexander 150
 burins (chisels) 59; bronze 320
 Burkitt, F. C. 412n., 689
 burning, systematic 80
 al-Burnusī *see* Barānis
 Burton, J. 710
 Burundi 364, 366 and n., 367, 368, 702
 Burullus 503
 Bury, J. B. 447n.
 bushbuck 39
 Bushman *see* San
 bushveld 64
 Busiris 206
 Butana (Island of Meroe) 219, 237, 245
 butchering *see under* meat
 butchers, Islamic 616
 Butler, A. J. 450 and n., 495, 711
 Butler, C. (ed.) 433n.
 Butr (branch of Barbar) 510, 511, 512, 513
Butyrospermum parkii (shea butter) 313
 Butzer, K. W. and Isaac, G. L. 30n., 32n., 35n. 686, 700; Butzer, K. W. *et al.* 686
 Buwayhids, Buyids 608, 609, 612, 619, 633
 Byblos 287
 Bynon, J. 694
 Byrsa, citadel of Carthage 118
 Byzacena 208, 475, 477, 480, 482, 484, 485, 486, 488
 Byzantine Asia 609, 620, 621, 623; Byzantine Greek world 374
 Byzantine emperor, court 438, 573; empire 7, 439, 442, 488, 489, 504, 612, 634; fleet 613, 620; frontier 513, 596, 612, 623; generals 619–20, 632; politics 497, 605; raids 503, 532
 Byzantines: in Egypt 8, 449, 450, 451, 499, 500, 548, 557, 561, 564; in North-West Africa 289, 485–9, 506, 507, 509, 513, 525, 534, 657, 707; in Sicily 532 621, 632
 Byzantium 206, 428, 431, 557, 560, 561, 570; influence in desert 525, in Nubia 212, 563, 567, 570
 C-group 269, 349
 cabbage 314
 Cadiz 292, 299; *see also* Gades
 Caecilian, bishop 466, 467, 468, 469, 475
 Caelestis, goddess (= Tanit) 203, 454
 Caelius Antipater 139
 Caesar 162–3, 187 and n., 189–90, 201, 288, 695; Caesar Octavian *see* Augustus
 Caesaraea in Mauritania *see* Iol (Cherchel)
 Caesaraea (Palestine) 417, 424, 430; bishop 417
 Caetani, L. 493 and n.
 Cagnat, R. 697; Cagnat, R. and Merlin, A. 706
 Cahen, D. 687
 Caillaud, F. 699
 Cainozoic 13, 16
 Cairo, al-Qahira: city 587, 622, 623, 630, 632, 704; Fatimid government 9, 626, 629, 630, 632, 633, 634; Fustāt 567, 577
 calabash 73, 314
 Calderone, S. 471n.
 Caligula, Emperor Caius 190, 412
 caliphate, caliph 7, 490, 516; caliphs 495, 517, 522, 590, 614, 620; Fatimid 9, 604, 606, 621, 622, 624; Fourth Caliph 590
 Callistus, bishop 456, 457
Cambridge Ancient History 691, 694
Cambridge History of Islam 710
 Cambyses II 98, 99, 101, 104n., 106, 112, 223, 225, 247, 288
 camel: introduction 155, 187 and n., 198,

INDEX

- camel (*cont.*)
 204, 220, 286–92, 697; period before introduction 144, 277, 280, 284; qualities 286–7, 291
 in Cyrenaica/Libya 198, 288, 289; Egypt 155, 276, 287; Eritrea 288; Kanem 681; Nubia 220, 244, 260, 270, 585; north-western Africa 144, 187 and n., 204, 276, 288, 289, 290, 700; Sahara 277, 280, 284, 286, 290–2, 651, 652
 model 252, 287
 saddles 327; transport 288, 289, 318, 499, 652
 cameleers, camelry 288, 290, 637, 653; camel-riding nomads, military groups 96, 98, 270, 339, 484, 486, 665; camel drivers 433
 camel-hair cords 287
 camelids 287
Camelus dromedarius 287; *C. thomasi* 287
 Cameroun 347, 354, 362, 702; southern 403, 405
 Cameroun, Mt 136, 298
 Campbell, B. G. 24n.
 Campo, M. van 15n.
 camps: hunting 58; permanent 51, 58, 84; seasonal 84; temporary 84
 Camps, E. 686, 690, 694, 695, 699
 Canaan 87
 canal (Nile–Red Sea) 95 and n., 100, 155
 canals, irrigation 500
 Canary Islands, *Makaron nosoi* 190, 292, 293, 300, 301, 318, 332
 Candace (Kandake) 237, 239, 241, 244, 247, 248, 249, 250, 251, 581
 Cannae, battle 172
 cannibals, cannibalism 373, 626
 canoes 360, 405
 Canopus 446
 Cantabria 247
 Cape, Cape Province 14, 17, 48, 54, 374, 396; northern 21, 37, 52, 64; southern 55, 63, 375; western 375
 Cape Blanco 293
 Cape Bon, Cap Bon 118, 129, 168, 507, 550n.
 Cape Delgado 196
 Cape Guardafui 196, 296
 Cape of Good Hope 297
 Cape Juby 292, 300
 Cape Verde to Lake Chad 311; to Morocco 136, 293, 301; to Indian Ocean 311
 Capeletti Cave (Khanquet si Mohamed Tahar) 73n.
 capital (economic) 617, 641
 Capot-Rey, R. 305n., 700
Capra spp., goats 318
 Capraria island 229
Capridae 273
Caprinae, sheep and goats 318
 Capsa = Gafsa 184
 Capsian 59–60; Kenya Capsian 59
 ‘Captains of the Saints’ 471
 captives (booty) 507, 513, 517
 Capussa 180
 Caracalla, emperor 417, 421, 422n.
 caravan guides 652; provisions 649
 caravans: camel 276, 286, 292; donkey, ox 276, 283; trading 550, 631
 Arabia–Nile 287; trans-Saharan 127, 645, 646, 647, 648, 650, 652, 667; *see also* routes
 carbuncles 127, 204
 Carchemish 95
 Carcopino, J. 458n., 654, 696, 697
 Caria, Carians 92, 96, 99, 152, 325, 326, 444; explorers 100; *see also* mercenaries
 Carmathians (Qarmatīya) 600, 608, 609, 611, 614, 620, 621, 622
 Carpenter, R. 691, 693
 carpenters 433
 Cartagena 171
 Carthennae (= Tenes) 128
 Carter, P. L. 86n.; and Vogel, J. C. 690
 Carthage 6, 7, 8, 691, 693, 694, 695; city 126; civilization 123, 132, 133–40, 693; empire 123–4, 126–33, 148; expansion 121–3; Phoenician colony 98, 109, 110, 116, 118–19, 276, 693
 army 125–6, 131; coinage 124–5; metals, prospecting 321, 322, 333; ships 293–4, 296; trade 121, 122, 123, 125, 127
 government, constitution 120, 122, 124; relations with Atlantic coast 121–2, 128, 292–3, 297–9, 693–4; with interior 121, 128–31; with North Africa 126–7; with sub-saharan Africa 133–40, 292–9, 693–4, 699–700
 wars: with Greeks 114, 120, 121, 122, 123, 124, 148, 167; with Masinissa 175; with Romans 123, 124, 148, 695; first Roman war 126, 130, 168–70, 179; second Roman war 130, 131, 159, 172–3, 177, 179–81; third Roman war 175, 182, 183, 185, 188; with Syphax 180
 New (Cartagena) 171, 172
 New (North Africa) (Roman) 201–2, 207, 208
 (Christian period) Bishops 459, 462, and n., 465, 467–72, 476, 481, 485; Byzantine empire 488; Christianity 416, 417, 450; Church, Christians 452, 460, 464, 465, 466, 477, 479, 482; city, university 474, 483, 486, 488, 489; Jews 412, 451,

INDEX

- 452, 460; martyrs, persecution 420, 451, 455, 461; Vandals 479, 481
(Arab) 507, 509, 512, 534
carts, chariots 144; *see also* war-chariots
Cary, M. and Warmington, B. M. 298 and n., 694, 696, 700
Casablanca 35, 555
Casanova, H. and Pérès, H. (ed.) 709
cash payments 594
Caspian mountains 608
cassava/manioc 402, 404
castella (fortified settlements) 458
Castellum Dimmidi (= Messad) 201, 206
Castellum Elephantum (= Rouffach) 466
Castellum Tingitanum 470n.
Castle Cavern 393
castles 524, 534, 535, 627; of salt 648
Cataracts of Nile: First 208, 259, 269, 437, 557, 560, 564, 573; Lower Nubia above First Cataract 99, 156, 193; between First and Second 193, 556, 572, 582; downstream of Second 225, 579, 584; Second 86, 95, 158, 582; Third 269; Fourth 219, 572; First to Fourth 267; Fifth 572
catechetical school 416
cathedrals: Faras 559, 565, 574–5, 580, 581; destruction 577; paintings 578, 579; reconstruction 576
?Old Dongola 580, 581
Timgad 470
Catholics, North-West Africa: ascendancy 472, 474, 475, 477, 478 and n., 483, 485, 486; attacks on 473, 476, 479; Augustine 472–3 and n., 475; clergy 479n., 487; supporters 477, 480, 483; Vandals' attitude 479, 481, 482
Caton-Thompson, G. 686
cattle: domesticated 73–f and n., 78, 79, 80, 86 and n., 303, 315, 316–17, 337; Lake Chad breed 316; longhorn 316, 374; ndama 316; shorthorn 74, 316; Sanya shorthorn 386; zebu 316, 317; *see also* under *Bos*...
wild 55, 60, 75, 76, 78; *see also* under *Bos*...
Carthage 129; Congo 404; forest 346, 348, 401, 404; interlacustrine 368; Libya, Cyrenaica 109, 144, 198; Nubia 221, 225, 228; Rift Valley 350; savanna 343, 344, 347, 348; southern Africa 376, 388, 395, 396, 400; Zambia/Malawi 379, 381, 383, 384, 385
in religion 349, 671; in rock art 75, 316, 317; vocabulary 353, 401; wealth 681
cattle kraal, enclosure 386, 394, 395
'Caucasoid' 69; 'Caucasian' 450
cavalry: Carthage 167, 170, 173, 179; Egypt 279; Maghrib 291, 627, 635; Nubia 654; Numidia 181, 184; Roman 191; Saharan 280; Sahel 339; Zaghāwa 681
Cave of the Bats 320
Cave of Hearths 689
cedar-wood 128, 189, 204
Celestius 477
cellae (Donatist) 471, 472
Celtic kingdoms 484
Celtis sp. 307, 347; *C. australis* 307n.; *C. integrifolia* 307n.
cemeteries 58, 59; Christian, North-West Africa 459 and n., 467, 470, 480; Jewish North-West Africa 451; Kumbi Saleh 674
Cenchrus biflorus (kram-kram) 305 and n.
census 513
Central Africa 35, 48–9, 65, 66, 343, 377; *see also* individual countries
Central African Republic 362, 405
centralization, Roman 207; political 392, 409
ceramics, enamelled 649; *see also* under pottery
cereal agriculture 344, 368, 395, 407, 703; cultivation 78, 80, 307, 309, 313–14; North-West Africa 109, 129, 130, 144, 182; Sahara 310
cereals: African staple 81; Asian 78, 81; Mediterranean 310; wild 310
army supplies 130; export 182; import 314
Bantu Africa 342–52, 360, 379, 383, 402, 404; interlacustrine 350
Cerne, *Cerne contra Atlantem* 128, 134, 136, 138–9, 292, 299
Ceuta = Šibta = Septem 292, 313, 606, 614, 625
Chad: breed of cattle 316; centre of *Pennisetum* 311
Chad basin, area 272, 311, 327, 328, 335, 639, 680, 681, 682; east and north-east of Chad 317, 326, 328, 333, 680; Lake Chad 21, 71, 80, 81, 272, 327, 644, 656; route to north 290, 643, 644, 650
Chael III, bishop 580
Chalcedon, Council 412, 438, 440, 441, 442, 444, 557, 563, 706; Definition of 439; Chalcedonian Church, Bishops 441, 444, 446, 448, 449, 450
chalcedony 48
chalcolithic cultures 145
Chalybeans 324
Chamla, M.-C. 335 and n., 336, 337, 690, 701

INDEX

- Chamoux, C. 692
 chancery 546
 Chantilly conference 714, 715
 chapel: funerary 233; reliefs *see under* reliefs, temple
 Chapelle, J. 277n., 303n.
 Chapman, S. E. 698
 Chari r. 406; Chari-Congo 348
 'Chariot of the gods', *Theon Ochema* 298, 300
 chariot tracks 278, 280, 281, 284, 296, 321, 334
 charioteers 337
 chariots, horse-drawn 276, 278–80, 283, 284, 292, 339, 700; in rock art 279, 280, 313, 321, 322, 333, 340; *see also* war-chariots; carts
 chariot-racing 116
 charity 449
 Charles-Picard, G. 693, 697; Charles-Picard, G. and C. 694, 695
 chauvenism (Alexandria) 443
 Chavaillon, J. 686; Chavaillon, J. and N. 687
 Chebka phase, Tichit 305
 Cheiko, L. (ed.) 709
 Chelif 611
 Chella, nr Rabat *see* Sala
 'cheque' (Ibn Hawqal) 646
 Cherschell 482n.; *see also* Iol
 Cherson (Crimea) 440
 chert 54
 Chester 501
 Chevalier, A. 310 and n.
 Chewa 384
 Chibi Reserve 387, 390
 chick pea 71
 chieftainship, kingship 390, 409
 chimpanzee 19, 26, 28
 China 300, 596
 Chipata 379
 chisels 58
 Chittick, H. N. 263
 Chobi 367
 Chondwe 380; Chondwe Farm 380;
 Chondwe vessels *see under* pottery
 choppers, stone 26, 28; chopping tool 34
 Chotts, Tunisia 486; Chott el-Hodna 211
 Choukoutien (China) 31
Chousaris 300
 Chretes r. 134, 137
 Chrysostom *see* John Chrysostom
 Christendom 611, 612
 Christian emblems, symbols 271, 557, 559, 573; minorities 577; period, North Africa 410–89, 509, 704–8; philosophy, belief 414, 704; ruler (Nubia) 557
 Christianity, Christian tradition 5, 7, 8, 411, 530; extinction, survival 494, 549, 711
 Christianity: Egypt 194, 411–51, 557, 704, 705; North-West Africa 203, 451–89; Nubia 556, 557, 559–64, 586, 587; Roman Empire/Mediterranean 206, 209, 411, 438
 Christianization: Aksum 261, 264, 265; Nubia 271, 557, 708, 713
 Christians: Egypt 502, 503, 522, 546, 547, 580, 591; North-West Africa 511; Spain 545, 606; Nubia 557, 560, 584, 587
 Christodoulos, patriarch 580
 Christology, christological controversies 415–16, 418–19, 432–3, 436–8, 486
 Christophe, M. 484n.
 chronicle, dynastic (Kanem) 682
 chronology 12–13, 18, 76, 685, 691; *see also* radiocarbon dates; potassium-argon dating; palaeo-magnetic chronology and other dating methods
 chronology, Nubia 214, 242, 257, 558, 576, 698
 chrysolites 155
 Chrysopolis 427
 Church: recognition by Constantine 206, 209, 557; Catholic 510, 547 (*see also under* Catholics); Monophysite, Jacobite 496, 510, 547, 549; Orthodox, Melkite 417, 496
 Egypt 194, 195, 411, 446–51, 537; North-West Africa 411, 451–67, 478, 489; Nubia 557, 564, 576, 580, 582, 583
 Church of the Martyrs 427
 church, Nuri 225; of St Mary, Qasr Ibrim 583
 church plate 465
 churches: Egypt 425; North-West Africa 465, 470 and n., 471, 478, 479, 480, 486, 487, 488, 509; Nubia 559, 560, 564, 568, 570, 572, 575, 577, 585, 713; formerly temples 560, 564; turned into mosque 583
 Cicero 474
 Cilicia 152, 163, 596, 597, 608, 609, 612, 620
 cinnamon 156, 164
 Cintas, J. and Fenille, G. L. 482n.
 Cintas, P. 693
 Circumcellions 428, 471, 472, 476, 478, 708
 circumcision (absence) 338
 circumnavigation of Africa 95, 100, 296–7
 circus factions (Egypt) 450
 Cirta (Constantine): Numidian capital 144, 180, 181, 182, 184, 185, 186, 187; Roman 188, 201, 207, 208; Christian 462, 465, 467, 479
 citadels 600, 606, 620

INDEX

- 'cities of the Tyrians' 140
citizenship, Roman 192, 195, 202
Citrullus vulgaris, water-melon 312
'city-states' 87, 89, 152
civil government (North-West Africa) 411;
civil power over church 427
civil war: Egypt 160, 161–2, 449, 517, 546;
Islam 521, 522, 591, 603, 632; North-
West Africa 457; Persia 101, 103, 104,
160; Rome 163, 186, 187, 189, 190,
205, 420, 457
civilization: African 10; Bantu 10; Christian
8, 411, 485; classical 8, 410, 420, 454,
489; Nubian literate 567; world 5, 6
Claasen, J. (ed.) 443n.
clan, merchant 616
Clark, J. D. 30n., 38n., 49n., 352n., 685,
686, 687, 688, 689; agriculture, food
production 302n., 303 and n., 309 and
n., 700; domestication 71n., 306, 316n.,
690; Early Iron age, metals 363n., 376,
377, 401n., 702, 703; stone hoes 307n.,
349n.
Clark, J. D., Haynes, C. V. and Mawby,
J. E. 688; Clark, J. D. and Kurashina,
H. 687; Clark, J. D. and Williams,
M. A. J. 687; Clark, J. D., Williams,
M. A. J. and Williamson, K. R. 51n.
Clark, W. E. le Gros 689
'Classic Nubian' period 579; *see also under*
pottery
classics, pagan 474
Claudius, emperor 412
clay bowls 350
clearing (of vegetation) 344, 346; tools 346
cleavers 32, 33
Clement 415, 416 and n., 417 and n., 418
Cleopatra II, wife/sister of Euergetes 160
Cleopatra VII (the famous Cleopatra) 158,
162, 163, 190, 193
Cleopatra Selene 190
clergy, Christian 75, 411, 470; *clerici* 470
clerical work 547
click sounds 342, 375; *see also under* languages
clients, clientage 434, 502, 503, 504, 512,
548, 606
client-kingdoms, states 148, 186, 190, 430
climate, climatic zones 2, 9, 13–14, 49, 342
climatic change 13, 15, 17n., 48, 49, 69, 79,
83; *see also* Sahara, 'wet'; desiccation;
lakes
cloth: fine 669; manufacture 567, 594, 596,
616; trade 124, 594
clothing 243, 360, 651, 669
coastal resources 53
cocoyam, *Colocasia esculentum* 314, 351, 402
Codex Theodosianus 434n.
Coelus dazo, *C. dysentericus*, 'Kaffir potatoes'
312
coffins of ancestors 622
coin finds 292, 293, 295, 301, 459n.
coin legends 183, 184, 187, 189
coinage: gold 155, 513, 634; silver 94, 99n.,
103n., 155, 182, 619; copper 155, 619;
bronze 179, 182, 183; lead 183
coinage, devaluation 205, 457
coins: Abū Yazīd 610; Aksumite 261, 263,
264, 265; Arab 494, 504; Carthage
124; Cyrenaica 110, 116; Greece 125;
Mauritania 189; North-West Africa
695; Numidia 179, 183; Ptolemaic 244;
Roman 244, 257, 301
Cola acuminata, *C. nitida* (kola) 313, 314
Colchis 496
Cole, G. H. 687
Cole, S. 687
Cole-King, P. A. 688
Colette, J. R. F. 687
Colin, G. S. and Lévi-Provençal, E. (ed.)
550n., 599n., 709
collecting *see* food-gathering
Colocasia esculentum (cocoyam) 314, 351, 402
Columbus, bishop 487
coloni, labourers' 434, 442, 464, 483
colonies: agricultural 109; trading 117
colonization: African 348; Arab 554; Car-
thage, Phoenician 117, 121, 144, 691;
Greek 107, 108, 691; Roman 201, 202,
697
colonizing peoples 140
colour symbols 634
Columnatan facies 60
comes, 'count' 207, 208
Commander of the Faithful (*Amīr al-
Mu'minīn*) 502, 505, 516, 521, 678
commercial centre 674; enterprise 696;
quarter 668; relations 653, 678; system
(trans-Saharan) 646, 650
Commodian 462
Commodus, emperor 410n.
'common series' of root words 354
community and government 526; merchant
community 611
'composite tool' 48
Conakry 293, 295
'confessors' 459–60, 466, 467, 473
confiscation of land 514
Congo basin 14, 38, 48, 49, 51, 342, 348,
687; north, north-east 352; south,
south-west 343, 344, 352, 387
Congo forest 343, 344, 397
Congo Republic 348, 403, 702
Congo r. 397, 405, 406; lower 344; bend 403
Congo/Zambezi watershed 384

INDEX

- Connah, G. 317, 329
 Conroy, G. C. and Pilbeam, D. 16n.
 Constans, emperor 469, 472
 Constans II 488
 Constantine (town) *see* Cirta
 Constantine, department, province 284–6, 629, 706
 Constantine I, emperor: accession, victory 426, 427, 467; constitutional changes 208; Egyptian Church 428, 429; North-West African Church 466, 469; recognition of Christianity 206, 209, 230; reign, time 410, 434, 444, 458, 462n.
 Constantine II 430
 Constantinople (Byzantium) 428, 435, 449, 507, 513; bishop, patriarch, episcopal *see* 431, 433, 435, 437, 446; communion 440, 441, 443; emperors 439, 483
 Constantinople, Council 431, 437, 440, 441
 Constantius 472
Constitutio Antoniniana 421–2 and n.
 constitutional change, reform: Carthage 122, 171, 174; Cyrene 111, 112, 164–5, 166; Egypt 421, 424; Libya 133; Rome 191
 consuls 191
 convent 424
 conversion to Christianity 561, 562, 582; to Islam 579, 585, 590, 672, 676, 677
 of chief or king 672, 678, 680, 682; prohibition 455; refusal 546
 Cook, R. M. 692
 Cooke, C. K. 688; Cooke, C. K. and Robinson, K. R. 688; Cooke, C. K., Summers, R. and Robinson, K. R. 688
 Cooke, H. B. S. 688, 690; Cooke, H. B. S. and Maglio, V. J. 13n., 690
 cooking 34, 60
 Cooley, W. D. 717
 Coppens, Y. 327 and n.; Coppens, Y. *et al.* 14n., 23n., 686
 copper 2, 145, 318, 320, 363, 398, 553, 694; mine, mining 128, 319, 320, 321, 322, 395, 397, 595; ore, deposit 322, 333, 397, 403, 595
 metallurgy, working 319, 322, 333; casting 324, 338; smelting 319, 320–1, 322, 324
 objects 234, 320, 322, 379; beads 387; fragments 381; frit (glaze) 319; ornaments 278, 322, 387, 398; strips 387; vessels 225; weapons 319, 320, 321–2; *see also under* coinage
 trade 670
 copper-working: in Mauritania 320, 321, 322, 333, 335; Morocco 320, 321; Niger Republic 321; Sudan Republic 322
 Copper Age (Mauritania) 319–22, 332, 701
 Copperbelt, Zambian 380, 688
 Coptic (Monophysite, Ya'qūbī, Jacobite) Church 446, 451, 494, 495, 499, 501, 514, 515, 557; patriarch 446, 449; monastery, monks 513, 567, 570; priests' vestments 511
 Coptic farm managers 536; heritage 7, 424; influences in Nubia 212, 567; officials 514; quarters 548; wine trade 567
 Coptos 206, 449; bishop 448
 Copts, Coptic population 429, 449, 499, 515, 589, 680; peasants, agricultural population 439, 448, 621; persecution 569, 570; Upper Egypt 591; uprising 522, 534, 569
 Cordoba: city 660; fugitives 533, 550, 551, 553, 645; government 494, 516, 520, 529, 555, 606, 614, 623, 626, 627; mosque 544
 Corippus, poet 289, 484
 corn 127, 130, 505; dole 419n., 421 and n.; export, Carthage 174, Numidia 182; production, North-West Africa 203; trade 596; *see also* cereals
 supplies: military 100, 174, 197, 203; Roman North-West Africa 203; Rome 195
 coronation (Egypt) 157, 158, 159; Gao 679; Meroe/Napata 222, 224, 225
corrector 207
 Corsica 121
 Cosenza 598
 Cosmas Indicopleustes 264
 costume, dress 576
 cotton 260, 313, 315, 553, 583; trade 596; cloth 616
 Coulson, N. J. 543n., 710
 Councils, Catholic (North-West Africa) 478
 court, Nubia 582; Numidia 184
 Courtin, J. 327 and n.
 Courtois, C. 203, 288, 289 and n., 482n., 484n., 697, 700, 707, 711; Courtin, C. *et al.* 707
Cousa 300
 couscous 305
 Couz r. ('Quosenus') 299
 cow-goddess *see* Isis
 cowpea, *Vigna sinensis* 71, 306, 312, 347, 402
 Cowley, A. E. (ed.) 691
 cowrie shells 381, 408
 'cradles of agriculture' 309–10, 312
 crafts, craftsmen 433, 449, 547, 550, 596, 615, 617; crafts, building 596, 617
 crania 68
 Cresconius 478 and n.
 Cresswell, K. A. 494, 712

INDEX

- Crete 107, 110, 197, 534, 551, 620
 Crimea 440
 crocodile 78, 134, 284, 297
 Cromagnon 59
 Crone, P. 506n.
 crops, cultivars: tropical 10, 155; South American 402, 403, 404; South-East Asian 402, 403, 404, 405; specialized 404
 cross: on church 583; in temple 560; on pottery lamps 559
 Crova, Mme 320
 Crowfoot, J. W. 245 and n., 713
 crown, Nubian 581
 Ctesiphon 526
 Cuicul (Djemila) 463, 471n., 478
 cultivation 71–3, 76–7, 80–2, 85, 86, 307–15, 343, 347; Sahara and Sahel 76, 78, 79, 275, 276, 307–9, 310, 311, 313
 cultivators 275, 548, 563; *see also* farmers; peasants
 cult-names 150
 cults: local 154; of the dead 146, 177; royal (Egypt) 150–1; Sarapis 154
 cultural relationships 348
 culture: Christian Nubia 556–7, 559, 567, 569, 572, 579, 586, 587, 713; classical Mediterranean 301; Egyptian 154, 194; Hellenistic 152–4; Islamic 490; Numidian, Mauri 177, 184; Phoenician 132–3, 184
 culture, material 42, 338, 557, 568, 569, 698
 Cuq, J. M. (ed.) 716
 curator (mayor) 411, 465
Curubis 461
 curia (city council) 470
 currency: cloth, 616; gold dust 619; silver 619; trimetallic 163; *see also* coins
 Curtis, G. H. *et al.* 23n.
 Curtius, Quintus 288
 Cushitic-speaking peoples 69, 70, 80; southern 396; *see also* under languages
 customs dues 124, 127
 Cyamakusa 367, 371
 Cyclades 149
 Cydamus (= Ghadames) 199–200, 201, 206
 Cyropolis 442
 Cyprian, bishop 7, 420, 459, 460 and n., 461, 462 and n., 468, 469, 707
 Cyprus: copper 319; Elissa/Dido 118; governor 449; Greeks 97, 98, 102, 104; Jews 196; Ptolemaic Egypt 149, 159, 160, 161, 162; Rome 162
 Cyrenaica: history 691, 693, 694; Stone Age 39, 42, 48, 54, 56, 58, 73, 77, 287; Greek colonization 107, 114, 116, 120; Greek cities 98, 108, 110, 116, 149, 692, 696; Greeks 132, 148, 196, 198, 276; Jews 196, 198, 415; Libyans 96, 142, 143; Ptolemaic 159, 160, 161, 163, 164–7, 288; Roman 191, 192, 197–8, 206, 207, 696; Christian 421, 437, 441, 446, 449, 450, 485, 488
 Arab conquest, rule 499, 505, 506, 511, 589, 711
 borders, area to west 89, 116, 523; fertility 109; horses 279; *silphion* 127, 198
 Cyrene: Battiadai 110–13, 147, 692; constitution 113, 165, 166, 167; cults 115; foundation 107–9, 692; hinterland 116; relations, with Egypt 96, 97, 110, 113, 114, 164, 165, 166; with Greece, Sicily 102, 110, 114, 123; with Libyans 96, 97, 113, 147, 165, 166; with Persians 98, 99, 693; war chariots 114
 Cyril of Alexandria 410, 433, 436 and n., 437, 438, 443, 704, 705; theology 436, 437, 438, 439, 445
 Cyrus, patriarch 447, 450, 451, 496, 497
 Cyrus II 98
 Dabban industry 54
 Dabod 228
 Dachraoui, F. *et al.* 711
 daggers, bronze 319; in rock art 319
 Dahalo 374
 Dahomey-Nigeria frontier 679
da'i (pl. *du'at*), 'caller' 599n., 600, 602, 603, 625, 647; *see also* Abū 'Abd Allah
dā'i, Miknāsa 606
Dā'i 'l-Du'at, chief *Dā'i* 605
 Daima 71, 272, 317, 329, 330, 334, 341
 Dakhla oasis 592, 621, 650
 Dakka (Pselchis) 228, 242, 246, 249
dakkūr, pl. *dakākīr*, idols 675
 Dalby, D. 315 and n.
 Dalmatia 416
 Dalziel, J. M. 307n.
 Damascus 490, 513, 592, 597, 601, 608, 612, 622; frontier 623; government 519, 550, 570; governor 596, 601; mosque 515–16, 544
 dambo, deposits 688
 Dambwa 582; 'Dambwa group' = Shongwe tradition 382
 dancing, ceremonial 66
 Daniel, Book of 455
 Daniels, C. 694
 Danqeil 237
 Danube r.: frontier 459; provinces 481
 Daphnae 91, 92, 94, 96, 99
 Dar'a 553, 554, 595, 639, 645, 658, 663, 664, 712; *see also* Darados
 Darados = Dar'a 299, 300
 'Daran', Mt 658

INDEX

- Dardanelles 149, 150, 158
 Darfur 268, 326, 366, 572, 680, 683
Dār al-Harb 566
Dār al-Hijra 599
Dār al-Islām 560, 595, 602, 650, 655
 Darius 95n., 99, 100, 101, 102, 155n.
Dār al-Mudhabbab, 'golden hall' 505
Dār al-Murābitīn 658, 659, 661
 Dar es Soltan cave 43
 Dar Tichit 71; *see also* Tichit
 Dart, R. A. 689; Dart, R. A. and Beaumont, P. 393n.; Dart, R. A. and del Grande, N. 688
 Darwin, Charles 82
 dates, date palms 144, 276, 278, 313, 314, 584, 616, 649; date stones 306, 313; groves 616
 dating *see* chronology
 David, king of Nubia 573, 584, 585; David II 585
 Davies, Oliver 306, 331 and n., 346n., 348n., 359, 360n., 686; Davies, O., Hugot, H. J. and Seddon, D. 302n., 306n., 700-1
 Davis, S. 695, 696
 Daw = Jebel Adda 585, 586
da'wa, 'calling' (Fatimid) 600, 602, 605, 607, 620; missionaries 620
dawāwīn *see* *diwān*
dawla, 'revolution', state ('Abbāsīd) 521, 522, 523, 526, 529, 599, 602, 609
 Day, M. H. 35n.
 'Day of Resurrection' 658
 Deacon, H. J. 689, 690
 Deacon, J. 689
 dead, cult of 146
 De Beer, G. 695
 Debeira 570, 573
 Debénath, A. 39n.
 Debre Damo 443
 debtors 472
 Decius, emperor 419, 423, 425, 459, 460, 465, 466
dedicīlī 422 and n.
 deer, giant 58
 defence 339, 584
 deification (of emperors etc.) 150, 177, 191
Deinotherium 27
 Deir el-Medina 233
 Delchaye, H. 466n.
 Delgado, Cape 196, 374
 Delta (Nile): eastern 497, 502, 548; head 496, 497, 501; marshes 102, 500, 613; northern 527, 533, 534, 547, 591; southern, south-western 428, 500, 510, 553
 and Christians 426, 429, 448; *epistrategos* 194; Muslims 211, 540; nome-chiefs 89, 90, 91; raids, invasions 90, 92, 278, 497, 620; revolts, civil war 157, 158, 449, 569
 Demeter and Kore cult 123
 Demetrianus 458n.
 Demetrius, bishop 416, 417, 421
 demons 424, 427
denarius (= *solidus*) 619
 Dendur, temple 258, 560
 Dennett, D. C. 493 and n., 514, 711
 denticulation, denticulate retouch 43, 61
 Deogratias, bishop 481
 depopulation, Egypt 197
 Derna 43
 Desanges, J. 284-6 and n., 300n.
 Deschamps, H. 405n.
 desert 14, 32, 43, 58, 242, 246, 525, 535; Egypt 5, 107, 111, 422, 423, 424
 borders 347, 516, 525; communities 535, 554
 east of Nile 95; west of Nile 98; southern (Korosko/Abu Hamed) 99; North-West Africa 484
 desertification 43, 78, 272, 277, 666; *see also* desiccation
 desiccation 61, 78, 79, 272-6, 339, 344, 349, 406; of Sahara 665, 680, 700; of Wagadu 673
 De Vaal, J. B. 393n.
 De Villiers, H. 394 and n., 406n.
 Devisse, J. 718
 devotion 535
 Dhakā, governor 604
dhimma, 'protection' 502, 512; *dhimmi*, 'protected' population 499, 502, 566
 Dhū 'l-Nūn al-Miṣri 549
dhura (*durra*)? sorghum 313
 Dia 671
 diaconate, deacons 464
diakonikon (room south of sanctuary) 570
 Dido *see* Elissa
 Didymus the Blind 705
 Die Kelders Cave 53
 Diehl, E. 707
 Diesner, H. J. 471n., 707, 708
 diet *see* food
 dietary prohibitions 103, 115
 diffusion 39, 59, 77
 digging sticks 34, 307 and n., 385
Digitaria, finger millet 302, 305, 311; *D. exilis* (fonio) 311; *D. iburua* 311; *D. ternata* 311, 312; *D. longiflora* 311, 312
 Dihya 528
din, *din Allah* 515, 516, 529
dinār 592, 593n., 619, 633, 646; minting 647; tolls 670

INDEX

- Dinga 673
 Dinkler, E. (ed.) 580n., 715
 Dio Cassius (Cassius Dio) 246, 248, 454, 695
 Dio Chrysostom 129n.
 'dioceses' (*dioceses*) 207
 Diocletian, emperor: abdication 205, 425, 467; illness 466; persecution 424, 426, 464; reorganization, reforms 205, 207, 208, 209, 269, 270, 463; vicennialia 466
 Diodorus Siculus 129n., 177n., 227, 228-9, 264, 692, 693, 694
dioiketes, 'manager' 151, 156, 162
 Dionysius, bishop 420, 421
 Diop, C. A. 312n., 323n., 701
 Diop, L.-M. 323n., 331 and n., 701
Dioscorea (yam) 302, 312; *D. alata* 351; *D. esculenta* 351
 Dioscorus, bishop 437, 438, 439, 440, 443, 446; Dioscorus II, patriarch 443, 444, 445
 Dire Dawa 39
dirham 619
 disc-core technique 37 and n., 47
 diseases 343
 Dishna 54
 disturbances 158, 196, 197, 205; *see also specific kinds* (riots etc.)
 divine kingship 150, 177, 681
 Divine Spirit, incarnation 629
 diviner 644
 diwān (pl. dawāwīn), register 502 and n., 511, 514, 545; ministry 511, 527
Dīwān al-Ishnā', *Diwan al-Rata'il*, chancery 613
Dīwān al-Salāṭīn 682, 683
ḍiyya' (sing. *ḍay'a*), 'estates' 535
 Djado 280
 Djait, H. 517n., 712
 Djedar tombs 484
 Djedi, Wadi Djedi 201
 Djehō 104, 105 and n.
 Djemila (Cuicul) 463, 471n., 478
 Djerba island 201
 Djerid 521, 523, 524, 534, 546, 553, 636; lbadites 524, 595, 618, 632, 633, 642, 643; revolts 550, 609, 610, 629, 630
 Djerma = Garama 143, 200
 Djidjelli (Igillgili) 128
 Djourab 272
 Do farmers (Songhay) 679
 Do (Daw) (Malinke) 671, 672
 Docetic christology 418
 doctrine *see under* theology
 documents, leather 574, 586; *see also under* evidence
 Dodecashaenus 257, 258, 269, 557
 Doggett, H. 310 and n.
 Dogon, Dogon cliff 311, 337
 dogs 386, 659, 660, 669; dog-eating 659
 Dolabella, Cornelius 286 and n.
 Dolhinow, P. C. and Sarich, V. M. (eds.) 19n.
 Doloaspis, governor 106 and n.
 dolorite 302
 domain land 499
 Dombrowski, Joanne 262 and n.
 Dome of the Rock 515
 domed buildings 668
 domesticated animals 386, 394
 domestication 61, 66, 70-82, 71n., 545, 690; animals 73-5, 79-80, 316, 349; plants 10, 71-3, 80-2, 349, 690
domestikos, official 582
 Domitian, emperor 290
 Domnus, patriarch 437
 Donatus 468, 469, 470, 472; Donatists, Donatist Church 467-73, 473-8, 484, 487, 706, 707
 Dongola 505, 569, 712; church 585; episcopal see 576, 583; kingdom 536, 573; *see also* Old Dongola
 Dongour, 'chateau' 263
 donkeys 276, 278 and n., 471, 670; 'Man on a donkey' (Abū Yazid) 610
 Dorey, T. A. and Dudley, D. R. 695
 Dorieus 109, 121
 Dotawo = Daw = Lower Do 586, 587
 Dougga 288, 483 and n.; *see also* Thugga
 Dozy, R. and Goeje, M. J. de (ed., trans.) 546n., 670n.
drachma 619
 Dracontius 483
 dragon-killer myth 679
 Drakensberg 375
 Drioton, E. and Vandier, J. 692
 drought 109, 339, 666, 671, 673
 drummer 679
 dry zone, north Africa 275
 Dryopithecus 16
 Dubief, J. 700
 Ducos, P. 278n.
 duiker 385
dukm, millet 313
 Dundo airfield, Angola 401
 Dunham, D. 698
 du Puigaudeau, Odette 334
 Dura Europos 452
 Dutch (at Cape) 374, 392
dux, 'duke', military commander 207, 208, 424, 447
Dux Thebaidis 447
 Dya dynasty 679
 Dyabe Sisse 673
 Dya'ogo 676
dynastes, 'chief' 176
 dynastic civilization (Egypt) 86; feuds (Nubia) 584

INDEX

- Dynasty (Egypt) 153, IV–VI 91; XXVI (Saite) 90, 691, 692; XXVII (Persian) 91, 104n., 691, 692, XXVIII 91, 104, XXIX 91, 104, XXX 104; Ptolemaic 150
- Dynasty (Kanem) 682–3
- Dyula, ancestral 341
- ear rings, bronze 320
- Early Iron Age 360, 363, 364, 702; Chad area 272, 327; East Africa 366–74, 377–8; forest zone 401–3; southern Africa 386–97; West Africa 335–41; Zambia/Malawi 374–86
- 'Early Khartoum' 68, 77
- earth pea (*Voandzeia subterranea*) 312
- East Africa: central 343; coast 1, 3, 164, 196, 295, 314, 373, 402, 696; eastern 66, 402, 407
- cultivation, crops 80, 311; Early Iron Age 366–74, 377–8; hominids 16, 17, 33, 69; literature 685, 687, 702; migration 79; Stone Age 30, 33, 43, 59, 65, 342
- 'East Atlantic Circle' 338
- Easter, date 421
- Ebeid, R. Y. and Wickham, L. R. 705
- Ebesos (Ibiza) 120, 124
- ebony 100, 220
- Ebro r. 171, 172
- ecclesiastical practice 576; property 499
- ecological change 16; factors 713; systems, ecosystems 12, 14, 31, 69, 82; zones 14
- economy: Egypt 154, 163, 197, 206, 433–4, 695; North-West Africa 205, 615, 618, 631; Nubia 713; Sahara 289; Stone Age 51; Sudan 301, 660
- vocabulary 358
- Ecumenical Council, Second 431
- Edeyen 275
- Edfu 572, 578
- education, Greek 229, 264, 422; Ifriqiyan 621, 632; North-West Africa (Christian) 455
- Edusius 465
- Edward, C. 688
- Egypt 2, 3, 5; administration 389, 390, 603; *see also* nomarch; satrap and similar titles; pilgrimage route 655; revolts and rebellions, in Persian period 101, 102, 103, 104, 147, in XXX dynasty 105, Ptolemaic 149, 157, 158, 159, 160–1, 162, 228, absence at invasions 428
- economy 154, 196–7, 210, 422; decline 590; currency 619; demand 219–20; great estates 434, 442; slave trade 638; trade 163–4, 595, 650
- hominids 16; palaeolithic 54; neolithic 71, 72, 73, 76; pre-dynastic 85, 323; dynastic 86; Old Kingdom 92, 103, 319, 349; Middle Kingdom 319; New Kingdom 89, 91, 103–5, 257, 319; Kushite dynasty 3, 7, 90; Assyrian invasion 90, 210; Saite dynasty 89, 90–8, 325; Persian rule 98–103, 105; Ptolemaic 105–7, 148–64, 227, 264, 325, 694, 695; Roman 192, 193–7, 206, 207–8, 209, 210, 245, 246, 266, 696; Christian 411, 451, 705; Church 411, 412, 421, 451, Jews 411, 412, persecution 419–20, 424–6, society 421; Persian invasion 449–50; Muslim 504, 533, 546, 'Abbasid conquest, invasion 428, 450–1, 611, rule 527, 532, 534; Arab invasion, occupation 493, 495–7, government 502, governor 521, 522, 523; Kharijites 518, 553
- Middle 194; Upper *see* Upper Egypt
- production: agriculture 71, 302, 310; livestock 276, 278, 287–8, 316, 319; metallurgy, copper 319, iron 323, 325, 334, 349, 701
- Wars etc.: 'Abbasid reconquest 598, 599, 601, 602; Fatimid conquest 623, 647; in North-West Africa 634, 635; North African intervention 597, 603, 607, 608, 609, 612, 620; Persian 102, 104, 105, 156–7, 158–9, 160; Zanj war 596
- Egyptian Christianity 7, 410–51, 568; contact with Nubia 228, 570; gods 253; independence 593, 597, 614; nationalism 101, 438, 557, 563, 601
- Egyptian influence: Meroe 211–12, 234, 236, 239, 241, 243; Aksum 264; style 227, 253
- 'Egyptian stone' 138
- Egyptianization of Hellenic Egypt 158
- Egyptians: in government posts 501; travelers in Nubia 557
- Ehi Dohar 308
- Ehret, C. 353n.
- Eilte, king 574
- Eirpaneme, king 560, 563, 582
- Ekdemos 165
- Elais guineensis* (oil palm) 71, 313
- eland 53
- Elandsfontein 35
- El Djem (Thysdrus) 205
- Elephantine (Aswan) 91, 92, 96, 99, 224, 246; garrison 99; Jewish colony 96, 691
- elephants: evolution 13; hunting 29, 49, 65, 156, 164, 360; not domesticated 316; tribute 385; *see also* war-elephants
- North African 125, 127, 204, 697; Meroe

INDEX

- 220, 228, 245; Saharan 272
 species: *Elephas maximus* (Indian elephant) 155, 157; *E. Reckii* 13, 27; *Loxodonta africana* (African elephant) 155, 156–7, 163, 167
 eleusine millet, *Elousine* 349n., 350
 El-Gerzeh 323
 Elgon, Mt 349
 Elgood, P. G. 692
 El Guettar 52, 335, 336
 Elissa (= Dido) 118, 119
 elite, Egyptian 153
 El Koro 572
 Ella Amida, king 264, 265
 El Merj *see* Barce
 Eltei, king 586
 Elymoi 130
 embassy 257
 embroidery 616, 619
 emmer wheat 71
 emperors, Roman 191, 194, 410, 427; genius 452; *see also under individual emperors*
 empires, western Sudan 341, 667
 emporia, trading stations 126, 127
 Emporia (coastal Tripolitania) 127, 175
 'empty areas' 83
Encyclopaedia of Islam 505n., 546n., 710, 712, 715
energeia, impulse of action 450
 Engaruka 372, 373
 England 31
 Ennedi 291, 327
 Enoch, *Similitudes* 455
ensele, *Ensete edule*, *Ensete* sp., false banana 81, 349n.
 Ensor, R. S. 587
 environment (vocabulary) 358; degradation 274
eparch, of Maris/Nobatia 568, 575, 577, 582, 585; costume 568
 Epiphanius 582
 Ephesus, Councils 436, 437, 440, 441
 Ephraim, patriarch 447
 epigraphy *see* inscriptions
 epi-Palaeolithic tradition 43, 54–61
 Eliphanes *see* Ptolemy V Epiphanes
epistrategos, over-general, viceroy 158, 160, 194
 equator-Cape 342
 Equatoria 47, 49, 51
 Equatorial Guinea 405
 equids 43, 60
equites, 'knights' 191
Equus mauritanicus 277, 287
 'Era of Martyrs' 426, 574
 Ergamenes (? = Arqamani) 227, 228, 229, 239, 241, 264
 Eritrea 6, 86, 288, 311
 Ermant 323
 Ermenna 570
 Eryxo 111
 Esarladdon, king 288n.
 Esna 578, 579
 Essen conference 714, 715
 Es-Souk 334, 340, 450; *see also* Tadmekka
 estates: Byzantine 612; Carthage 129; Egypt 500, 514, 536, 547, 548, 591, 593n.; North-West Africa (royal) 617
 Ethiopia 4, 5, 6, 310, 311, 349, 351, 352, 372; coastlands 288; highlands 14, 262, 343, 443; north 71, 262, 362; rift 69, 79; west, south-west 350, 352
 Christianity 443; Church 7, 48, 443, 451, 572; king 572; missions 411, 430, 443; Monophysites 433, 445; style 262
 human types 21, 39, 70; Stone Age 43, 685, 686, 690, food plants, crops 81, 310, 311, livestock 80, 86 and n., 317
 'Ethiopia', 'Ethiopians': 'fish-eating' (East African coast) 374; North-West Africa 141, 143, 145, 286, 289, 290, 299; Nubia 99, 100, 138, 156, 223 and n., 311, 326; western Africa 134, 138, 139
 Ethiopian fauna 17, 78, 272
 ethnic distinctions 669; relationships 348
 ethnography *see* evidence, ethnography
 Etruscans 121, 124
 Eudocia, princess 485
 Eudoxus of Cyzica 139, 164 and n., 299
 Euergetes *see* Ptolemy III Euergetes; Euergetes II *see* Ptolemy VII Euergetes II
 Euhesperides (Benghazi, Berenice) 99, 108, 109, 112, 113, 116, 164, 166
 Eumedes 45
 eunuch 603, 612
 Euphrates 592, 596
 Eurasia: burial 53; fire 34; hominids 30, 33, 83; land connection 15; stone cultures 27, 32, 37, 44, 47
 Europe, Europeans 5, 6, 7, 9, 16, 30, 31, 39, 319, 341
 European period, South Africa 375
 Eusebius, bishop 427
 Eusebius, historian 414, 420 and n., 425, 426 and n., 427, 461n., 465n., 466
 Euthymeres 134, 297
 Eutyches 437, 438, 440, 441, 445
 Eutychius (Sa'id b. Batriq) 495, 709
 Evetts, B. T. (ed.) 449n., 709
 evidence: anthropology, physical 685; archaeology 3, 4, 362, 363, 374, 685; agriculture, origins 80, 81–2, 302, 304–10, 341, 344; human origins 68, 83, 84;

INDEX

- evidence: archaeology, (*cont.*)
 metal working, origins 94, 145, 326, 327, 331, 333, 341, 363, 366
 archaeology: Atlantic coast 139, 140, 292, 293; Bantu Africa 344–53, 359–73, 376–402, 408–9, 685; Egypt 93, 692; Libya, Cyrenaica 116, 133, 198, 692; North-West Africa, Spain 117, 118, 178, 494, 685, 691, 693; Nubia 556, 558, 560, 564, 569, 587, 713; Sahara 301
 biology 19, 67, 82, 204, 310–15, 701
 ethnography, palaeo-ethnography 4, 49, 67, 71, 76, 304, 327, 701
 geology 369
 immunology 19
 linguistic 4; Bantu zones 353–9, 364, 400–1, 402, 404, 405–6, 407, 702; Khol/Bantu 396–7; origins of agriculture 71, 76, 312, 315
 literary 327, 564, 572
 military 377
 numismatic 695; *see also* coins; coinage
 technological 327
 evolution 82, 84
 Exarch (Byzantine Africa) 487, 488, 560
 exchange 80, 565, 567; *baqt* 505; *see also* trade
 exchange relationships 345, 376
 existentialism 415
 exploration: Red Sea coasts 155; western Africa 7, 100, 190, 292–300; *see also individual explorers*
 extortion 163
 Eyasi, lake 35
 Ezana (Aezanes), king 260, 261, 265, 267, 268
 Fabian, bishop 459
 factions 515, 541; *see also under* Muslim
 Facundus, bishop 486, 707
 Faql b. Ja'far 608
 Fagan, B. M. 4, 10, 378, 385, 386n., 389n., 394n., 401n., 408n., 702; on radiocarbon dates 362n., 397n., 401n., 703; and Van Noten, F. 688; and Phillipson, D. W., Daniels, S. G. H. 382n.; and Yellán, J. E. 408n.
 Fage, J. D. 302n., 701, 718; and Oliver, Roland 703
 Fagg, Bernard 330; and Eyo, E., Rosenfeld, A. and Fagg, A. 686
 Fagnan, E. (ed. and trans.) 599n., 709
 Fakurian (microlithic) 54
 Faleme r. 667
fals, fils (pl. *fulūs*), copper coin 619
 false banana (*Ensete* sp.) 81
 family dominion (Idrisids) 553; families, merchant 616
 famine 500, 622
 fanatics, Islamic 549, 633, 661
 Fang peoples 405, 406
faqīh (jurist), Juddāla 660, 661
faqīr, al-faqīr, poor, holy 520, 522
 Farafra oasis 621
 Farama 613
 Furan Maka Bote 679
 Far East 31
 Faras: Ballana period 269, 563; bishopric 430n., 558, 563, 568, 576, 580, 583, 714; Christianity 447, 448, 559, 560, 561; cathedral, churches 564, 574–5, 580; *eparch* 582; excavations 558, 559, 698, 714; Nubian kings 568; paintings 563, 570, 574, 714; settlement 258
 Farias, P. de M. 659 and n., 717, 718
 farmers 330, 335, 349, 390, 393
 farming manual 130; tools 346, 347, 674
 Fars 646
farsakh (measure of area) 651
fatā (pl. *fiṭyān*), page, escort 504, 528, 589, 597, 612
 Fāṭima, daughter of the Prophet 602
 Fatimids 9, 579, 583, 602–11, 634, 715; Byzantines 621; caliphs, caliphate 620, 622, 628, 647, 657; Egypt 622, 623, 630, 648; Ifriqiya 543, 604–7, 618, 625, 631, 636, 647, 718; Sijilmasa 619, 647; Zirids 631, 632–4, 635, 636, 657
 Fatimid attacks, campaigns, raids 606, 607, 608, 614, 617, 622, 643; bribes 620; claims 607, 620; forces, support 603–4, 611, 614; gold 619; persecution 605, 657; propaganda, writers 543, 599n., 602, 614, 620–1; *see also da'wa*; ship 617; symbols 607, 634; taxes 610
fatwā (pl. *fatāwī*, *fatāwā*, 'opinion', cf. *muftī*) 541
 fauna, faunal assemblages 13, 19, 29, 39, 49–51, 53, 63–4, 688, 690; Ethiopian 17, 78, 272; forest/grassland 39
 Faure, A. 717
 Faustos of Milveis 474
ḥay', booty 517
 Fayum 100, 154, 155, 317n., 497; Fayum A. 71, 73
 al-Fazārī 340, 651 and n., 667; Abū 'Abd Allah Muhammad b. Ibrāhīm 651n., 716; Abū Ishāq Ibrāhīm b. al-Ḥabīb 651n.
 Felicitas 417, 455
 Felix, St 482
 Felix, bishop 468
 Felix III, Pope 441
 Ferlini 248

INDEX

- Fernandes, Valentim 314, 315n., 317
 Fernando Po 332
 Ferring, C. R. 42n.
 Fertile Crescent 5, 598, 609, 663
 festal letters 421
 Festus, Valerius 286, 289
 Feti la Choya 401
 Février, P. A. 478; and Duval, Y. 707
 Fez, Fez al-'Aliya, 'city of 'Alī': chronicler 664; control, capture 606, 614, 624, 625, 626, 627; foundation 526, 553; Idrisids 606, 624, 625; murder of Idris 528; refugees 550, 553, 645; trade routes, trade 647, 648, 649; Umayyads 624, 626, 627, 663; viceroy 624, 627
 Fezzan 313, 523, 553, 682; domestic animals 73, 318; Garamantes 143, 200, 204, 283, 694; Islam, conquest 489n., 506, 511, 637, 643; people 336, 337; rock art 146, 318; Roman campaign 286; routes 127, 201, 280, 284, 286, 289, 290, 525, 593; trade 127, 204, 525
 field-system (stone) 372
 'fifths' (*khums*, *akhmās*) 517
 figs, fig-leaves 29, 129, 313
 figurines, pottery, clay 329, 330–1, 389
 finances: Egypt 106; Carthage 126; *see also* revenue
 financiers 191
 finger millet 79n.
fiqh, jurisprudence 531, 657
 fire, bushfire 34, 374; fireplaces 57; *see also* hearths
 firearms 639
 fire-hardening 138, 145
 Firka 270
firki, lands 81, 329
 Firmus: Egyptian rebel 269; North-West African rebel 473, 478n.
 fiscal system, Egypt 547, 590; *see also* taxation
 fish 32, 53, 57, 58, 64, 67, 77, 78, 272; fish cult 679; fish-eating 374, 395; fish smoking 57
 fisheries 100, 127, 128; fishermen 303, 304, 327, 331, 360, 374, 400, 679; fish-hooks 327
 Fishhoek Cave 53, 68
 fishing: Stone Age 54, 343, 368, 395, 404, 406, 407; 'purples' 127, 128; vocabulary 358
 Atlantic 128, 134, 139; North-West Africa 126
 fission (ethnic groups) 338
fitna (civil war) 521, 531
fiṭyān *see fatā*
 Flaccus, Suellius or Septimus 286 and n., 289
 flake technique 22, 26, 28, 30 and n., 37, 43
flaminers, pagan priests 470
 Flannery, K. O. 52n.
 Flavian, patriarch 437
 Flavius Apion 442
 Flavius Genimius Catullinus 484
 flax 127, 596
 fleets: Andalus 611; Byzantium 613, 620, 657; Carthage 125, 169, 173; Cilician 608; Egyptian 149, 155, 449, 503, 620; Greek 102, 113; Ifriqiyan 603, 607, 614, 624; Muslim 657; Numidian 184; Roman 168, 170
 Fliche, A. and Martin, V. 706
 Flight, Colin 306, 316, 331 and n., 717
 flint 38
 flocks, nomad 339
 Florus, *praeses* 466 and n., 467
 'flying gallop' 279, 283
 Foerster, W. 705
foliis, copper coin 619
fonio (*Digitaria exilis*) 311, 314
 food 689; aquatic 78, 689; fruits etc. 16, 65, 67; preferences 13; preservation, storage 57, 78; sharing 28, 29; supplies, resources 12, 19, 60, 65, 360, 376, 467, 567, 664, 689; vegetable 342, 344
 food animals, domesticated 73; food plants, African 10, 402; South American 402, 404; South-East Asian 351, 402, 403, 404; Sudanic 80
 food-gathering 29, 302, 303, 304, 305, 342, 343, 347; *see also* hunter-gatherers
 food production 5, 9, 301–18, 342–53, 366, 703; *see also* agriculture; animal husbandry; in Eastern Africa 350, 352, 369, 690; forest Negroes 347, 348, 352, 406, 407; interlacustrine region 344, 349–50; Sahara, Sudan 301–18, 342–3, 344–6, 347, 349, 690, 700; southern Africa 386; West African rainforest 346–7, 402, 403, 404, 405; Zambia/Malawi 383, 384, 386, tools 346, 347, 348, 666; vocabulary 353, 358
 Forand, D. 565n., 567n.
 foreign rule, Egypt 99, 100, 105–7
 forest: clearance 82, 344, 347, 348, 402, 403, 404; regeneration, secondary 349, 404
 deciduous *see* woodland
 equatorial 14, 21, 30, 49, 82, 83; Congo, Congo basin 28, 344, 348, 349, 352, 357, 364, 397, 401–4, 406, north of equator 343, 345, 346, 349; Guinea 343, 348, 349n.
 gallery 14, 16, 26, 49, 58, 65, 343, 344
 montane 14, 371
 forest/savanna ecotone 16, 17, 32, 65, 82,

INDEX

- forest/savanna ecotone (*cont.*)
 88; mosaic 48
 zone 306, 310, 338, agriculture 310
 forgery (Hanno) 298
 Formula of Reunion 436
 fort, fortifications 486, 509, 596; great
 fortress (Madinat al-Salām) 527;
 fortress-city (al-'Abbāsiya) 528, 534;
 Fustāt 527, 593, 622
 Fort Victoria 386
 forum 509
 Fosbrooke, H. A. *et al.* 690
fossa regia, 'Royal Ditch' 183
fossatum, wall and ditch 201
 fossil man 16–24, 686, 689, 690; see also
 under *Homo*
 Fouche, L. 394n.
 Fourth Edict (of Galerius) 466
 France 30, 172, 516
 Franciscans 587
 Frank, T. 169n., 696
 frankincense 156
 Fraser, P. M. 695, 696
 Fraxinenses 206
 free will 416, 418
 Freeman-Grenville, G. S. P. 373n., 392n.,
 407n.
 Friend, W. H. C. bibliography 704; on
 Monophysites 705; on North-West
 Africa 203n., 455n., 464n., 471n., 483n.,
 489n., 697, 707, 708; on Roman mile-
 stones 458n.
 frescos, Nubian 568, 570, 574
 Friday prayers 544, 593, 612, 668
 Frisk, H. 373n.
 Frobenius, Leo 323, 702
 frogs 28
 frontier, Ghana 666; Nubia/Egypt 557, 567
 frontier defences, Roman 208, 697
 fruit 343, 346; wild 144, 347; trade in 596
 Frumentius, bishop 264–5, 430
 fuel 333, 334, 335
 fugitives 513; peasant 547–8; see also
 refugees
 Fulani 275, 316, 337, 637, 676
 Fulful b. Sa'id b. Khazrūn 627, 628, 629, 630
 Fulgentius of Ruspe 482
 fullers 433
 Funa r. 263, 264
 Funj 588
fuqahā' (sing. *faqīh*), jurisprudence 531,
 538, 543, 594, 596, 656, 657, 658, 664;
 Ḥanafī 656; Judālla 660; Sijilmāsa 664
 Furi mine 401
furū', 'branches' of Islamic Law 540
 Fustāt 578, 591, 597, 612, 613, 623; archives
 567; area around 514; army 533; attack
 569, 601, 603, 608; camp, base 501,
 502; Christian population 547; fortress-
 city 527, 593, 622; governor, govern-
 ment 536, 589, 592, 596, 622, 623;
 jurist 537; Mosque of 'Amr 544;
 Muslim civil population 515; Nubian
 pottery 572; riots 636
 Futa Jalon 316
 Futa Toro 675, 676, 717
Futūb, 'conquests' 545, 595
 Gabel, C. 688
 Gabes 520, 535, 628, 633, 634, 635, 636,
 642; Gulf of 127, 201, 507
 Gabon 14, 135, 297, 362, 405, 702; north
 403; Gulf of 298
 Gabriel IV, patriarch 430n.
 Gadallah, E. 697, 698
 Gadeb, Plain of 687
 Gades (= Cadiz) 117, 118, 120, 121, 123,
 134, 139, 171, 172, 299
 Gaetuli 143 and n., 147, 178, 184, 186, 187,
 190, 200
 Gafsa (= Capsa) 636, 642, 659
 Gaia, father of Masinissa 146n., 180
 Gaianus, Archdeacon 445
 Gaiseric 479, 480, 481, 484; army of 479, 480
 Galam 139, 340
 Galerius, emperor 426, 466
 Galla Lakes 43
 galleys: Carthaginian 125, 135; classical
 293, 299
 Gallic auxiliaries 199
 Galloway, A. 394n.
 Gallus, Emperor 460
 Gallus, Aelius 246, 286
 Gallus, Gaius Cornelius 245–6
 Gambaga 668
 Gambia r. 673
 game 64, 65, 77, 344, 347, 360, 385, 388, 407
 Gangara 665
 Gangra 440
 Gao town 280, 314, 322, 642, 644, 650, 668,
 717; kingdom 667, 671, 675, 677–9,
 680, 682, 716
 Gara Djebilet 333
 Garama (= Djerna) 143, 200
 Garamantes 127, 143, 200, 638, 694;
 chariots, horses 283, 284; Roman cam-
 paigns 286 and n., 289, 290; trade 127,
 133, 204, 286 and n., 290
 garden cultivation 348, 361, 385
 gardens, gift 225
 Gardiner, A. 692
 Gardner, T. 386, 394 and n.; and Wells,
 L. H. and Schofield, J. F. 386n.
 Garlake, P. S. 390n., 702, 703

INDEX

- garlic 314
 Garonne v. 30n.
 garrison: Carian, at Ikhmindi and Buhen 95;
 Carthaginian, in Afri territory 130;
 Fustāt 591; Persian, in Egypt 99;
 Ptolemaic, in Egypt 165; Qasr Ibrim
 583; Roman 192, in Cyrenaica 198, in
 Egypt 194, 208, 424, in North-West
 Africa 194, 208, 290, in Nubia 246, 247,
 250, 269, 270
 garrison duties 503
 Garstang, J. 223 and n., 236, 239, 250, 698
garti, shea butter 314
 Gast, M. 303n.
 Gateau, A. (ed. and trans.) 489n., 707, 709
 gateway, monumental 604
 gathering *see under* food
 Gauda 186
 Gaul 456, 468, 480
 Gautier, E.-F. 203n., 204n., 289 and n., 510,
 511n., 513, 628n., 697, 707, 711
 Gawhar 712
 Gawi 328
 gazelle 51
 Gbaka people 406
 geese, sacrifice 154
 Gellimer, king 485
 Gemai 270
 Gemellae (= Mlili) 201
 gene pools 17, 35, 69, 70
 'general' root words 354, 355, 358, 359
 Generals, rule 120, 122
 Geniza (storehouse) 631, 715
 Genoa 607
 geographers, Arabic, Muslim 558, 595, 645,
 667, 709, 715, 716
Geography by Juba 190
 geologists, French 685
 George, prefect 497
 George I, king of Nubia 575, 577, 581;
 George II 572, 579
 George Maniaces, general 632
 Ger r. (= Wadi Guer) 286
 Germain, G. 105, 298 and n., 693, 700
 Germany, Germanic kingdoms, tribes 612,
 443, 481
gerousia, 'senate' (Alexandria) 194
 Gezira 572
 al-Ghāba, 'the forest' 668
 Ghadames 286, 595, 650; *see also* Cydamus
 Ghalbūn 612
 Ghana, ancient 339, 340, 341, 651 and n.,
 653, 665–71, 677, 680, 716; capital 313,
 340, 349, 666, 667, 668, 674–5; gold-
 trade 139, 340, 639, 644, 670, 671, 676;
 iron 332; Islam 659, 668, 669, 684;
 routes 642, 648, 650; ruler, king 653,
 663, 666, 668, 669, 670; salt 669, 670;
 Soninke 666, 672, 674; Wagadu, Kaya-
 Magha 673–4
 Ghana, modern 49, 71, 306, 331, 347, 348,
 359
 Ghast, Ghust 554, 618, 645, 655
ghazwat al-asbrāf, 'battle of the nobles' 520
 Gheria el-Garbia 201, 206
ghilmān (sing. *ghulām*) *see* *ghulām*
 Ghiyāra 644
 Ghiyārū 671
ghulām (pl. *ghilmān*) slave, young man of
 trust 504, 528, 592, 596, 597, 612
 Gibb, H. A. R. 502n.; and Kramers, J. H.
 (ed.) 710
 Gibraltar Straits 16, 279, 292, 296, 299, 513
 Giessen papyrus 422n.
 gifts, exchange 666
 Gildo brother of Firmus 476
 Giligamai 108, 115, 142
 Gillespie, R. 86n.
 Gines, J. V. (ed.) 682n.
 giraffe 272, 283, 585; pottery decoration
 243
 Giustolisi, V. 132n., 693
 Giza 578; battle 603
 glacial advances, retreats 13, 14, 272
 glaciation, last 38; main, Wurm 43
 Glanville, S. R. K. (ed.) 500n.
 glassware 267, 292, 649; ornaments 649;
 see also goldweights
 glaze 319, 570
gld (?) = *aguellid*, 'king' 147, 177
 glottochronology 315
 Gnostics, gnosticism 415–17 and n., 418,
 457, 474, 705
 goats 243, 315, 317 and n., 318, 343, 347,
 380, 383, 396; *see also* sheep and goats
 'god' (ref. by Silko) 559
 gods: Amun-Re' as state god 239; Egyptian
 271; Roman 410 and n., 454, 456, 459,
 463; tribal and local 410, 454, 464, 485;
 see also particular gods
 Goeje, M. J. de (ed.) 510n., 590n., 645n., 708,
 715
 Goitein, S. D. F. 615n., 631n., 715
 Gokomere Hill 386–7, 388, 389, 393, 408,
 702; Gokomere tradition 393, 394; *see*
 also under pottery
 gold: bars 649; coins, currency 592, 619;
 see also under coinage; demand, uses
 525, 594, 619, 647; dust, nuggets 619,
 670; offered to emperor 442; tribute,
 taxes 100, 652, 670; trade 138–9, 644,
 667, 670–1
 East African 648; Nubian 95, 99, 156,
 220, 322, 647; Sudan 639, 644, 647,

INDEX

- gold (*cont.*)
 652, 667, 670, 671, 674; Wagadu 673;
 West African 122, 124, 128, 138–9, 295,
 301, 340
 goldfields: Egypt, eastern desert 578;
 Nubia 158, 323; Wadi ‘Allaqi, Red Sea
 Hills 95, 99, 536, 573, 578, 593;
 Rhodesia, eastern Africa 392, 408;
 West Africa 295–6; Bambuk 667, 669,
 671; Bure 340, 671
 mines, mining 158, 296, 536, 573, 579,
 594, 646; gold rush, prospecting 573,
 619; gold working 323, 670
 objects: church plate etc. 260, 585, 619;
 ornaments 189, 581, 649, 669; statue
 225
 ‘golden age’ 454, 594
 Goldhizer, I. 762
 goldweights (glass) 649, 674
 Goodchild, R. H. 499n., 697, 711; and Ward
 Perkins, J. B. 697
 Goodwin, A. H. J. and Van Riet Lowe, C.
 685, 689
 Gordian III, emperor, Gordianus, Gordians’
 revolt 205, 206, 410n., 457, 458, 459n.
 Goree 293, 295
 gorilla 19
Gospel according to the Egyptians 415; . . .
to the Hebrews 415
Gospel of Thomas 415, 705
 Goths 459, 479
 Goumbou 673, 674
 Goundam 280
 Goungou 305
 Gouraya (Gunugu) 128
gourbis, dwellings 488
 gourd (*Lagenaria* sp.) 73, 313, 314; *see also*
calabash
 Gow 679
 Grace, doctrine of 411
Graeci, Greeks 87n.
 Graeco-Egyptian culture 6, 423, 450; reli-
 gious cult 424
 Graeco-Roman society (Egypt) 414
 graffiti 216, 242, 257, 259, 261, 573, 574,
 576, 579, 714
 Graham, A. J. 692
 grain, collected: wild 78–9, 276, 305, 307;
 cultivated 220, 262, 290, 306, 307, 350,
 353, 584; impressions 304–5, 306, 308;
 raids 339; trade, exchange 80, 594, 615;
see also under cereals
 grain-growing areas 615
 granaries, grain silos, grain bins 308, 386,
 471, 472
 grammar, Egyptian 254
 Granada 627
 grapes 299, 649
 grass pollen 344
 grasses, wild 57, 60, 71, 78, 79, 80, 307
 grasslands 14, 38, 49, 51, 58, 60, 64, 80, 274,
 666
 grassland species (game) 64
 Grat-Beal-Guebri 262
 grave-robbing 226
 Gray, R. and Birmingham, D. 408n.
 grazing 82, 587; grazing/browsing 61
 ‘Great Desert’, *al-Majāba al-Kubrā* 648
 Great Lakes, area west of 397
 Great Persecution 424–5, 465–6, 482, 704
 ‘Great Plains’ province 175
 Greece: Roman wars 162, 181; journey to
 417; states 98, 148
 Greek cities 149, 194; colonization 87–89;
 culture 6, 152, 153–4, 194, 694; histo-
 rians, writers 102–3, 116, 153, 154, 177,
 188, 194, 691, 692; philosophy, science
 6, 184, 414, 417; rule 106–16, 139–46,
 164–7; ships, navy 102, 113, merchant
 124; temples 97; threat in western
 Mediterranean 119; travellers 102, 557;
see also individual cities
 Greeks 87n., 184, 510, 564; Cyprus 104;
 Cyrenaica 107–14, 145, 276; Egypt 103,
 104, 150, 152, 154, 160, 412, 692;
 Egyptian dependence on Greeks 102,
 104; mercenaries, Saite 92, 96, 97, 98,
 99, 104, 325; XXVIII dynasty 104,
 105; Ptolemaic 151; Muslim 592; offi-
 cials, administration 151, 154, 158, 161,
 194; traders 92, 94, 97, 102
 and Jews in Alexandria 196, 412, 695; in
 Cyrenaica 198
 Greenberg, Joseph 353, 354 and n., 355–6
 and n., 702, 703
 Greene, D. L. and Armelagos, G. 270n.
 Gregory, Pope 487 and n., Gregory VII 546
 Gregory, *exarch* 488, 507
 Gregory Nazianzen, bishop 431
 Grein 307
 Grenfell, B. P. and Hunt, A. S. (eds.) 415n.,
 704–5
 Griffith, F. L. 255 and n., 698, 714
 Griffith Institute 698
 Grillmeier, A. and Bachts, H. 706
 grinding equipment, grindstones 57, 58, 60,
 61, 65, 67, 307, 350, 379, 394
 Grindley, J. R., Speed, E. and Maggs, T.
 375n.
 groundnuts 404
 ground stone tools 65, 66, 70, 82, 346
 groves (Ghana) 668
 Grünebaum, G. E. von 710
 Gsell, S. 129n., 289 and n., 464 and n., 478n.,

INDEX

- 693, 695, 700, 706; Marçais, G. and Yver, G. 711; and Pflaum, H. G. 706
 Guardafui, Cape 164, 196
 Guadalquivir r. 516
 Guelb-Moghrein, nr Akjoujt 320
 Guest, R. (ed.) 533n., 601n., 708, 711
 Guinea (zone) 317
 Guinea coast, coastlands 14, 318, 343, 349; Gulf 297
 Guinea (Republic) 71, 78, 312, 348
 Guinea, Neolithic 332
 guinea-fowl (pottery decoration) 243
 Gulussa, son of Masinissa 183
 Gumanje tradition 390
 Gundu 381, 408
 Gunthamund 481, 483
 Gunugu (Gouraya) 128
 Gurdler, R. W. and Styles, P. 17n.
 Guthrie, Malcolm 315 and n., 354 and n., 363, 364, 400–1 and n., 403 and n., 703–4; 'general roots' 354, 356, 358 and n., 359 and n.
 Gwaii r. 408
 Gwisho hot springs 67, 68, 383, 688
 Gyges, king 91, 92
 Gyles, M. F. 692
- Ha'a'ibre' (= Hophra, Apries) 96
 Habāsa, general 603
 Habasha people 680
 Ḥabashī b. Aḥmad 608
 al-Ḥabashī 'l-Aswad, 'black Ethiop' (Abū Yazid) 609
 Ḥabīd b. 'Abd al-Rahmān 523, 531
 Ḥabīd b. Abī 'Ubayda b. Uqba b. Nāfi' 516, 520, 638, 639
 habitat 13, 15, 17, 26, 61
 Hadar 21
 Haddadian people, period 327, 328, 330, 335
 Hadhramaut 316
 ḥadīth (pl. *ḥawādīth*) tradition 537, 538, 660
 Hadrian, emperor 194, 198, 696
 Hadrumetum (= Sousse) 118, 123, 128, 175, 208, 459
 haematite 393, 408; *see also* under iron
 Ḥafṣ b. al-Walid, Ḥafṣiya 504
 hafting of tools 42, 59
 Hagarenes (sons of Hagar) 502
 Haidra 466; *see also* Ammaedara
haikal, sanctuary 570
 hair (for clothmaking) 616
 ḥājib, chamberlain 527
 ḥajj, pilgrimage 551
 Hajj Creiem cave 43, 51
 al-Ḥajjaḥ 513
 Ḥakam II (Cordoba) 623, 624
 Ḥākīm, caliph al-Ḥākīm al-Manṣūr 580, 627, 628, 629, 630, 632
 Hakor, king 104, 113
 halberds 325; in rock art 320
 Halfan 54
 Halicarnassus 444; heretical sect 561
 Hallur (South India) 349n.
 Hamdab (nr Meroe) 242, 249, 250
 Ḥamdān Qarmat 599
 Hamdanids 608, 609, 612
 Hamilcar, general 120, 121, 129; sons of 121
 Hamilcar Barca 169, 170, 171, 180n.; daughter of 179
 Hā Mīm (prophet) 609
 'Hamites' 375
 Hamitic longhorn cattle 316
 Ḥammād (brother of Manṣūr) 627, 629, 630; Banū Ḥammād 627; Ḥammadids 628
 Hammamet, Gulf 461
 Hamman Meskoutine *see* Aquae Thubilitanac
 hammerstones 26
 Hana 260
 Ḥanafī school, Hanafites 539, 540, 541, 656, 657
 hand, human 20
 handaxes 30, 32, 33
 handicraft *see* crafts
 Hands, A. R. 693
 Hannibal 171, 172, 173, 174, 180 and n., 181, 695; niece of 59
 Hanno, explorer 121–2, 128, 129, 134–40, 297–9, 693, 700
 Hanno, general 169, 170, 171
 Hanno, politician 122, 131
 Hanotaux, G. 764
 Hanḡala b. Safwān 521, 522
 Haoulti 262, 265
 al-ḥaqīr, 'the vile' 520
 Harari tradition 390
 ḥaras, 'guard' 512, 538
 harbour 604
 Harden, D. 691, 693, 694
 Hardy, E. R. 705
 hares 53
 Harkhuf 276
 Harlan, J. R. 81n.; and Wet, J. M. J. de, and Stemler, A. (eds.) 79n., 690
 Harmachis 157
 harness 279
 harpoons 327
 Harris, J. R. (ed.) 500
 Harsiotef, king 214, 223, 224, 254, 326
 hartebeeste 39, 55, 58
 Hartel, W. (ed.) 458n., 461n., 462n.
 Harthama b. A'yān 528, 533
 Harts Valley 52
 Ḥārūn b. Khumārawayh 597, 601, 602, 608
 Ḥārūn al-Rashīd, caliph 528, 533, 591, 651n.

INDEX

- harvesting 346
 Ḥasan (son of 'Alī) 521, 526, 552; Ḥasanids, descendants of Ḥasan 521, 526, 528
 Ḥasan (last Idrisid of Fez) 625
 Ḥasan b. al-Nu'mān 489, 509, 510, 511, 512
 Ḥasan b. 'Ubayd Allāh, regent 621, 622
 Ḥasan al-Kalbī 614
 Hasdrubal, son of Mago 120, 121, 129
 Hasdrubal, son-in-law of Hamilcar Barca 171
 Hasdrubal, son of Hamilcar Barca 172
 Hasdrubal, son of Gisco 180, 181
hasham, retinue, household army 528, 535, 555, 626
hashid al-Sūdān, recruiting agent 639
 hatchet, bronze 320
 Hatshepsut 245
 Haua Fteah Cave (Cyrenaica) 39, 42, 54, 73, 287, 307, 317n.
hawādīth see *ḥadīth*
 Hawarra 489
 Hawf, eastern 515, 533, 534, 535; western 620, 628
 Hawkes, Jacquetta and Woolley, Sir L. 319
 Hawwāra people 610, 643
 Hay, R. L. 26n.
 Haycock, B. G. 216 and n., 224 and n., 225 and n., 227 and n., 698
 Haydarān, battle 625, 639
 head-dress, horned 568, 582
 hearths 52, 61
 Hebrew Bible 418
Hegemon (Abbot) 446
 Hegerit 482
 Heine, B. 356 and n.
 Heinzelin de Braucourt, J. de 687, 688
 Hejaz 9, 626; see also Mecca
 Hekataios 141, 142, 694
 Heliiodorus 244, 256
 Heliopolis 153
Helix sp. 60
Hellenes 87n.
 hellenism, hellenization 152, 153, 154; hellenistic Egyptian style (Nubia) 242, 245, 252
 hellenistic influence 8; period, rulers 5, 148, 150, 694
 Helwan (summer capital) 505
 Hemmemiya 76
 Henchir Tarlist 484
 henna 313
Henotikon, 'Edict of Unity' 441, 442
 Henrici, Alick 356, 357 and n., 358, 400
 Heraclea 428
 Heracleon 415
 Heraclius, emperor 447, 449, 450, 451, 488, 496
 Hercules (? = Melkart) 177, 178
 herding, herders: Stone Age 70, 71n., 76, 78, 79–80, 86; Early Iron Age 374, 375, 376, 703
 in Carthage 74; southern Sahara 275, 304, 316, 317
 nomad herds 486
 heresy, anti-heretical laws: Christian 427, 440, 461, 476, 482, 487, 561, 705; Muslim 658, 659, 660; Barghawāta 658; Shi'ite, Kharijite 658
 Herm, G. 691
 Hermas, prophet 455
 Hermiane 486
 Hermopolis 434
 Herne island 137, 293
 Herodian 458
 Herodotus 3; Carthage 693; Cyrenaica 109, 110, 113, 115, 692; Egypt 90, 92, 97n., 99, 101 and n., 102, 103 and n., 104, 692; Garamantes 283, 638; Libyans 116 and n., 141–2 and n., 143, 144, 146 and n., 147, 284, 694; Meroe 216, 218, 222, 223, 238; navigation 296, 297, 298; 'silent trade' 137 and n., 296, 646; Xerxes, Persian invasion 288, 326
 Herskovits, M. J. 702
Herva coco, cocoyam 314
 Heussi, K. 424n.
 Hexapla Bible 418
 Heyerdal, Thor 293
 Hiarbas 186, 189
 hiatus: post-Mousterian 43; mid/late Stone Age 61
Hibiscus esculentus (okra) 312
 hides and skins 128, 178, 290, 295, 315, 616
 Hiempsal II, king 177, 178, 184, 186–7
 Hiempsal, son of Micipsa 185
 Hierasykaminos (Maharraqa) 193, 258
 Hierneaux, J. 70n., 366 and n., 398, 690, 702, 703; and Maquet, E. and Buyst, J. de 397n.
 Hierocles, prefect 426
 hieroglyphs: Egyptian 254, 255, 423, 438, 549; Meroitic 254, 255, 257
 high veld 14
hijra ('*begira*'), exodus 502n., 503, 600; retreat 656, 661, 663; see also *Muhājirūn*
hila, 'device', dispensation 543, 594
 Hilālī Arabs see Banū Hilāl
 Hilderic, king 485
 Himera, battle 121
 Himilco, son of Hamilcar 121
 Himilco, son of Hanno 122
 Himyar, Himyarites 164, 260, 430, 443, 625, 634, 635, 636

INDEX

- Hintze, F. 225 and n., 227 and n., 229, 242, 246, 256n., 698, 714; king-lists, dates 241 and n., 250–1 and n., 249 and n.
- Hippalos 196
- Hippo (Bizerta) = Hippo Diarryhtus 118, 123, 128 and n., 170, 183n., 476, 479; ecclesiastical see 471, 476
- Hippo Regius = Bone 128n., 183 and n., 184
- Hippolytus 454 and n.
- hippopotamus 27, 29, 49, 55, 65, 78, 134, 272, 360
- Hircus mambrinus*, *H. thebaicus*, *H. reversus* goats 317, 318
- Hirschberg, H. Z. 509n., 712
- Hishām, caliph 516, 518, 659
- historians: Arabic 492, 494, 558, 613; Christians 558; Egyptian 153, 154; Greek and Roman 102–3, 116, 188, 691
- historiography 2, 3, 92
- History of Egypt* (Manetho) 153
- History of the Patriarchs* 517, 522, 572
- Hitti, P. K. 597n.
- Hittites 324
- 'hoe neolithic' 348
- hoes 307 and n.; stone 346, 347, 348, 349; iron 385; hoe cultivation 338
- Hofrat en-Nahas 322
- Hofuf 600
- Hoggar see Ahaggar
- hogs, wild 315, 316
- Holocene 67; early 60, 70, 76, 85, 688, 690; mid 70, 80, 85
- Holroyd, M. 696
- Holt, P. M. 587
- Holy Man (Islamic) 523, 552, 555; holiness, inherited 552
- Holy Places (Mecca and Medina) 609, 614, 620; Guardian of Holy Places 621
- Holy Sepulchre, Church 629
- Holy War (jihad) 549, 551, 655
- Homer 298
- hominids 13, 16–24 and n., 685
- Homo* 21, 23 and n., 24 and n., 689; *H. erectus* (*Atlantropos*) 23, 24, 30–2, 33, 35, 36, 83, 84; *H. habilis* 23 and n., 24n., 83, 84; *H. helmei* 41; *H. rhodesiensis* 35; *H. sapiens* 35, 39, 41, 69, 85; *H. sapiens neanderthalaensis* 39
- Homoosios*, 'of the same substance' 428, 429, 431
- Honorius, emperor 477
- hooks, bronze 320
- Hophra (Ha'a'ibre') 96
- Hopkins, J. F. P. 711; and Levtzion, N. 638n., 717
- Horappolon 438
- Horn of Africa 5, 43, 70, 79, 316, 349, 352, 443, 686
- 'Horn of the South' 298
- Horowitz, J. 710
- horses: draught, pack 144, 276, 315; Sahara 138, 277–80, 283, 291, 292, 327, 339; wild 60
- breeding, herding 109, 129, 284, 318, 535 and n., 550n.; harness, trappings 279, 581; trade, wealth in horses 617, 639, 681
- horsemen, horse-riding 144, 270, 271, 279, 299, 327, 591, 600, 605, 637; see also cavalry
- hospital of Ibn Tūlūn 601
- hostages 130
- Hottentot see Khoi
- Houdas, O. (ed. and trans.) 673n.; and Delafosse, M. (ed. and trans.) 671n.
- houses, huts, mud/mud and pole 58, 347, 377, 386, 390, 393, 397
- Houtsma, H. T. 667
- Howell, F. C. 13n., 35n., 690; and Bourlière, F. 302n., 308n., 700; and Clark, J. D. 689; and Cole, G. H. and Kleindienst, M. R. 687; and Coppens, Y. 23n.
- Howieson's Poort type 40, 48, 54
- Hsü, K. J., Ryan, W. B. F. and Cita, M. B. 17n.
- Huard, P. 302, 326–7 and n., 334n.
- Hubac, P. 693
- ḥudūd*, punishment 660
- Huffman, T. N. 363n., 386, 389n., 390n., 392n., 702
- Hugot, H. J. 303n., 307 and n., 308n., 699
- Humai, *mai* 682, 683
- human origins 4, 16–24
- human sacrifice, infant 132, 133
- human types, physical 373; Bush 342, 386; Negro 342, 386, 394, 407; 'non-Negro' 394; pygmy 403–4
- humidity 13
- Huneric, son of Gaiseric 481 and n., 482, 485
- Hungary 16
- hunter-gatherers 10, 38, 60, 76, 78, 272, 275, 330, 331; modern 19, 29, 67, 84; hunter-gatherer-fishers 77, 80, 690
- Bantu Africa 357, 360, 376, 383, 385, 407; Congo 342, 403, 404; Khoi 374, 375, 396; Sahara 275, 277; West Africa 345
- hunting, Stone Age 13, 21, 28–9, 34, 43, 49–51, 53, 60, 65
- bands 376, 403–4; camps 43, 51, 52; grounds 361; for sport 283; vocabulary 358
- Hunwick, J. D. 650n.
- Ḥūsayn, son of 'Alī 599; line of 521, 540

INDEX

- Hussey, J. (trans.) 499n.
 Hutchinson, Sir J. 310n.
 huts, reed 681
 Huxley, T. H. 19, 82
 'hydraulic despotism' 500
 Hyksos 278
 Hylics, 'unredeemable' 416
hypostasis, 'individuality' 433; hypostatic union 436
- Ibādites, Ibādi Kharajites 9, 518, 546, 619, 641, 712; community, Ibādiyya 535, 540, 541, 543, 616, 618, 641, 643, 659, 684; imamate (Tahert) 642, 643; shaykhs 552, 623; sources, tradition 610, 632, 641, 709–10, 716; traders 9, 550, 616, 639, 641, 644, 646, 652, 716
 Ibādites, Djerid, Jebel Nefusa 524, 595, 618, 632, 633, 644; Tahert 524–5, 595, 600, 610, 618, 642, 643; Tripoli 518, 522, 523, 524, 621, 643; Wargla 618, 639, 643; Zawila 643
 Ibalaghen 335
 Iberian peninsula 319
 Ibero-Maurusian industry 58, 59, 60
 Ibiza *see* Ebesos
 Ibn 'Abd al-Ḥakam 538; on camels 700; narrative, North-West Africa 489 and n., 511, 512, 517, 518, 520, 522, 707, 708, 709; sources, plan of work 492, 493, 494, 495, 595, 710; terminology 510, 511, 532; 'Uqba b. Nāfi' 291n., 637, 638 and n.
 Ibn 'Abd al-Ḥalīm 554n.
 Ibn 'Abd al-Ṣamad 634
 Ibn Abi 'Āmir, Almanzor (Al-Manṣūr) 624–5
 Ibn Abi 'l-Jawād 539
 Ibn Abi 'l-Rijāl (= Abenragel) 630, 632
 Ibn Abi Zar' 718; Ibn Yāsīn 658, 659 and n., 661, 662 and n., 664 and n.; Ṣanhāja 654 and n., 656 and n., 666; sources 653 and n.; Sūs al-Adnā 516n.; 'Uqba b. Nāfi' 637; Zanata 633–4 and n.
 Ibn Abi Zayd 650 and n.
 Ibn al-Arquṣ 591, 601
 Ibn al-Ash'ath, governor 523, 524, 643
 Ibn al-Athīr 517, 523 663 and n. 709, 715, 718
 Ibn Baṭṭūta 314, 317, 322, 648
 Ibn al-Faqīh 313, 645, 650, 651n., 716
 Ibn al-Farūk 543
 Ibn Ghānim, *qādī* 543
 Ibn Hammād 644n.
 Ibn Ḥanbal 539
 Ibn Ḥawqal: Banū Hilāl 621, 633; Egypt 548 and n., 650; Maghrib 615, 658n., 709, 715; Morocco, Sous 541 and n., 554 and n.; Sahara, Sudan 315, 618, 646–7 and n., 649, 650, 653, 666, 716; Ṣanhāja 652 and n., 655
 Ibn 'Idhārī: Almoravids, Ibn Yāsīn 661, 663 and n., 718; North-West Africa 522, 554n., 599n., 624n., 667n., 709, 715; revolts, Barbar, Djerid 517, 518, 550; sources, terminology 511, 512, 653n.
 Ibn al-Kalbi 510
 Ibn Kayghalagh 607, 608
 Ibn Khaldūn Almoravids, Ibn Yāsīn 654 and n., 660n., 663n., 664, 718; gold 670n.; Maghrib 510, 518, 599n., 636, 709, 715; Nubia 558
 Ibn al-Khalīj, 'son of the canal' 601, 603
 Ibn Khazar *see* Muḥammad b. Khazar
 Ibn Khurdādhbih 596
 Ibn Mudabbir, *amīl* 590, 592, 593, 613
 Ibn Mulhim (Amin al-Dawla Ḥasan b. 'Alī Mulhim) 635
 Ibn al-Munammār 632–3
 Ibn Naji 542n.
 Ibn Nuṣayr 518
 Ibn Qaṭān 520
 Ibn Qutayba 680n.
 Ibn Rashīq, poet 542, 543
 Ibn Rāyiq 608
 Ibn Rustam *see* 'Abd al-Rahmān b. Rustam
 Ibn al-Ṣaghīr 553, 642n., 643n., 709
 Ibn Sa'id 680, 682 and n., 715, 716
 Ibn Sharaf 715
 Ibn al-Sarrāj 609
 Ibn al-Sūfi 549, 592, 593
 Ibn Takīn 607, 608
 Ibn Ṭalūt 609
 Ibn Ṭughj *see* Muḥammad b. Ṭughj
 Ibn Ṭūlūn (Aḥmad b. Ṭūlūn) 592, 593 and n., 596, 597, 598, 601, 609, 619, 622
 Ibn al-Warrāq 615
 Ibn al-Wazīr al-Jarawī 533, 534, 535
 Ibn Yāsīn ('Abd Allāh b. Yāsīn) 555, 656 and n., 658, 659, 660, 661, 662, 663, 664, 676
 Ibn al-Zubayr (rival caliph) 503
 Ibn Zūlāq 613, 715
 Ibrāhīm (brother of Caliph Ma'mūn) 577, 578
 Ibrāhīm II (Kairouan) 529, 593, 594, 595, 597–8, 599n., 600, 602, 603, 614
 Ibrāhīm b. al-Aghlab 528, 529, 532, 534, 543, 639
 Ibrāhīm al-Kurdi 583
 Ibrim (= Tilbye) 430n.
 Iceland 356
 Iconoclastic movement 570

INDEX

- iconography 563, 576
 Icosium (= Algiers) 128
 Idfuan (macrolithic) 54
 'idols' 447, 668, 672, 675, 678
 Idris b. 'Abd Allah, Idris I 526, 553; Idris II 553, 554; Idrisids 9, 605, 606, 614, 624, 628
 Idris, H. R. 541n., 550n., 615n., 624n., 715, 717
 al-Idrisi 314, 318, 546 and n., 651, 670 and n., 651, 670 and n., 676, 681-2 and n.
 Ife 325, 330, 338
Ifriqī (pl. *Afāriq*, *Afāriqa*) 509-10
 Aghlabid 649; Fatimid 602, 603, 605, 606, 608, 609, 612, 626, 629, 647
 Ifriqiya 509, 510, 516, 536, 641, 657, 658; army 511, 513; base for raids 516; currency 619; *fuqahā*, *qādī*, 'ulama' 538, 543, 594, 596, 656; government, governor, ruler 513, 522, 528, 602, 628, 639; Ibrahim II 593, 597; independence, suzerainty, tribute 512, 525, 598; Islam 9, 540, 541, 549, 551, 555, 596; language 546; merchants 618, 644, 650; migration 553; mining 595; rebellion, rebels 517, 600, 639; slaves 638; struggle for control 520, 523, 534
 Igbo-Ukwu 338
 Igilgili (= Djidjelli) 128
 Igli 553, 595
ijmā', 'consensus' 537
Ijnāw(un) (? = *Ignaw*, sing. *agnaw*), 'Blacks' 643
 Ikhmindī 95, 560
al-Ikhshid, 'servant' 608
 Ikhshidids 579, 593, 613, 614, 622, 623; guard 622; Syria 620
 Ikjan 600
 Ilevbare, J. A. 693, 697
 'illuminated' (Gnostic) 416
 Illyrians 152
imām, 'entering safety', 'faith' 501
imām, leader 518, 523, 524, 542; *imām difā'*, defence leader 525
imām, imamate, Ghana 668; Ibadite 641, 642, 643, 645n., 677; Shi'ite, Ismā'ili, Fatimid 540, 590, 599, 604, 606, 607, 629, 636
 immigrants, Muslim 547, 553
 imperial decree abolishing Isis worship 560
 impoverishment, Egypt 197, 590
inani, melons 314
 Inaros (Ienheru) 101, 102, 692
 Incarnation, Christian 410, 411
 incense 164, 276
 indemnity 173, 174
 India 100, 125, 139, 156, 164, 195, 196, 300; origins of crops, domesticated cattle 311, 314, 316; of copper-working 318; South India 293, 349n.
 Indian Ocean 9, 100, 164, 190, 293, 300, 314, 316, 390; coast 349, 351, 397, 402, 409
 Indian influence, Meroe 253
indictiones, assessments 434
 Indonesia, Indonesians 300, 402
 Indus r. 100
 infant sacrifice 203
 infantry: Numidian 181, 184; Roman 192
 inflation: Egypt 163; Rome 205
 'informal' macrolithic industries 61, 64
 ingots, copper 320
 inheritance system *see* succession
 inland waterways, Egypt 608
 Innocent III, Pope 542
 insanity 578
 inscriptions: Adulis 288; Aksum 260, 264, 265; Cyrenaica 164-5, 692, 695; Egypt 151, 691; Ghana 674; North-West Africa, classical period 177, 178, 184, 185, 695, 696, 697; Christian period 458, 462, 470, 472, 482, 484 and n., 487, 488; Muslim period 510; Nubia, Meroitic 216, 223, 224-5, 227, 228, 241, 260, 326, 698
 Christian 563, 573, 582, 585, 714
 language 221-2, 226, 254, 271, 698
 insignia, 'Abbasid 634; Sunni 634; Islamic (Gao) 678
 Inskeep, R. R. 687, 688, 702, 703
 intellectual ability, human 41
 Interglacial, Last 37, 38, 47, 60
 interlacustrine region 344, 350, 364, 365, 366, 368, 378
 intermarriage 115, 152, 540, 547, 548, 549, 654
 'intermediate complex' 61
interventor, temporary administrator 467
 invasion: of Egypt, Assyrian 210, by Alexander 227, Persian 228, 428, 449; from Palmyra 206, 269; by Nubia 210, 569, 572, 578, 579, 583; Arab 428, 450; of Nubia by Egypt 216, 218, by Persians 223; of Lower Nubia by Meroe 241, by Romans 245
 Inyanga, Inyanga highlands 68, 388
 Ioannes III, bishop 580
 Iol = Cherchel = Caesaraea 128, 190
 Ionians (mercenaries) 325
iqṭā'āt, land concession 635
 Iran 504, 533, 715; *see also* Persia
 Iraq: army 533, 601, 604; capital 526, 536, *see also* Baghdad and Samarra; control, government 504, 513, 612, 620, 623; control of North Africa 589, 590, 593,

INDEX

- Iraq** (*cont.*)
 598; currency 619; Islamic scholarship, literature, architecture 7, 530, 538, 544, 545, 607, 706; people 497, 553, 646; revolts 521, 592, 599; sects 518, 523, 540, 541
- Irassa (Erasem)** 108, 115; battle 111
- iron** 99, 145, 224, 239, 323–5; hard 324; soft 324, 325; in copper slag 323 and n., 333
- mining** 327, 595; iron ore 324, 333, 334, 363, 393, 398, 402, 408; iron meteoric 323, 324; iron-producing regions 402
- objects** 234, 324, 333, 334, 359, 367; amulets, beads 324, 398; tools 2, 94, 329, 335, 360, 402; weapons 2, 94, 325, 329, 333, 335, 360, 361, 373; wrought iron 324
- working** 2, 10, 239, 318, 323–5, 336, 341, 692, 701; in Bantu Africa 2, 344, 347, 359–66, 377–8, 379, 383, 393, 402; charcoal 324; forging 324, 333; furnace 319, 320, 330, 334, 359, 364, 367, 393, 395; impact 352, 360, 362; slag 359; in Bantu Africa 367, 371, 377, 380, 381; Lake Chad area 327, 328; Meroe 239, 320, 701; Taruga 330; smelting 94, 133, 145, 323, 333, 373, 393; technology 10, 318, 323–35, 358, 359, 363, 364, 398; using 345, 352, 362, 407
- Iron Age:** Bantu Africa 343, 352, 360, 362, 363, 369, 377, 383, 688, 702; beginnings 94, 318, 342, 350, 358, 364, 374, 407; neglect 392; West Africa 317, 328n., 332, 334, 341, 701; *see also* Early Iron Age, Later Iron Age
- irrigation, irrigated land:** Egypt 155, 163, 195, 433n., 492, 711; Nubia 219, 257–8; North-West Africa 98, 203, 548, 550; Djerid 550; Sahara 310, 313
- methods:** basin 500, 515; wheel (*sagya*) 195, 219, 220, 257
- Isaac, patriarch** 572
- Isaac, G. L.** 13n., 17n., 29n., 30n., 687; and others 687; and McCown, E. R. (ed.) 16n., 17n., 24n., 29n., 686
- 'Isā b. Yazīd al-Aswad, 'the Black'** 644, 645
- Isaiah, monk** 439n.
- Isamu Pati** 385, 386
- Isaurian** 440
- Ishango (L. Edward)** 688
- Ishāq (Abū Laylā Ishāq b. Muḥammad b. 'Abd al-Ḥamīd)** 535
- Ishmaelites (= Arabs)** 288, 497, 502
- Isis, goddess** 103, 115, 146, 246, 560; feast of 447
- islam, 'acceptance of peace', 'submission'** 501, 503, 511, 512, 514, 517, 523, 529, 554, 600
- Islam** 6, 7, 506, 529, 554; expansion 5, 8, 9, 412, 548, 552–3, 637, 650, 655, 681; magical elements 672; origins 494; outpost 643; revolution ('Abbasid) 529
- Islamic influences** 676, 679; learning, schools 588, 657, 658, 659, 668, 682; orthodoxy, ideology 8, 529, 655, 658, 659; pre-Islamic period 339, 340, 341
- Islamization** 544–55, 675, 678, 683; Islamized kingdoms 678
- islāman jadīdan, new conversion** 660
- 'Island of Meroe' (= Butana)** 219, 221, 256, 260, 267, 268
- islands, offshore** 107, 117, 118
- Ismā'il, imām, al-Manṣūr** 611
- Ismā'il b. Ja'far al-Šādiq** 599, 604; Ismā'ili sect, Ismā'ilites 599, 602, 604, 624, 629, 631, 633; Ismā'ili sources 600, 610, 615
- Ismā'il b. 'Ubayd Allah** 517, 520
- ismād, chain of transmission** 537
- isolation of West Africa** 341
- Israel** 30
- al-Iṣṭakhri** 638, 646 and n., 650
- Itāh** 536
- Italians: mercenaries** 170; traders 184, 186, 189
- Iter praeter Caput Saxi** 286
- I'tizāl, 'separation' (mu'tazila)** 521
- Ituri region, Zaire** 403–4, 405
- ivory:** Guinea Coast 295; Nubia 156, 220; Numidia 178; Red Sea and the Horn 156, 164, 196, 244, 264; Sahara 204
- trade** 94, 127, 128, 276, 290, 373, 390, 392, 409, 536; tribute 290, 301; uses 138, 270
- Ivory Coast** 348
- Iwo Eleru** 65, 68, 335, 337
- Jabbāra b. Mukhtār al-'Arabi** 634
- Jabbaren** 94
- Jābir** 591, 592
- Jackson, G., Garthen, J. S. and Posnansky, M.** 366n.
- 'Jacobite' (Ya'qūbī) Church (Coptic, Monophysite)** 495, 496, 497, 499
- Jacoby, F.** 694, 695
- Jacques-Félix, H.** 305
- al-jadd al-rābi', 'fourth grandfather'** 682
- Jadotville** 398
- Jaeger, J. J.** 35n., 690
- Ja'far b. Alī b. Ḥamdūn** 611, 614, 623, 624, 625, 628
- Ja'far b. Faḍl b. al-Furāt, vizier** 621, 622
- Ja'far al-Šādiq, 'the authentic', great-grandson of Husayn, Sixth Imām** 540, 599, 604

INDEX

- Jakobielski, S. 714
 Jameson, S. 696
jāmi', 'congregational' mosque 544
 Janmart, J. 687
 jasper 48
 Jawdhar, eunuch 612
 Jawhar, general 579, 614, 619, 620, 621, 622
 Jawhar b. Sakkum (Juddāla) 660
 Jawjaw (= Kawkaw) 677
 Jaysh b. Khumārawayh 597
 Jazūla 664
 Jebel Adda 587; *see also* Daw
 Jebel Akhdar (Cyrenaica) 107, 505
 Jebel Barkal *see* Barkal
 Jebel Haraza 268
 Jebel Irhoud (Morocco) 39
 Jebel Moya 68, 259
 Jebel Nefusa 109, 523, 524, 553, 595, 597, 618, 633, 643, 644; Ibadites 524, 595, 618, 633, 644
 Jebel Qeili 252, 311n.
 Jebel Teioualt 488
 Jebel Tomat 71
 Jeffreys, M. D. W. 315 and n.
 Jenne 671
 Jerma (Djerma) (= Garama) 200, 633, 637, 638
 Jerome, St 433, 469 and n.
 Jerusalem 96, 499, 515, 544, 629; bishop, episcopal see 417, 446; 'Jerusalem' 439, 455
 jewellery, silver 248, 270, 617
 Jews 502; in Cyrenaica 196, 198, 690; in Egypt, Alexandria 7, 152, 196, 412–14, 691, 696, 712; in North-West Africa 451, 452, 455, 510, 541, 546, 642, 645; mercenaries 92; refugees 96
 Jewish-Christian hostility 414; scriptures 415, 418
 Jewish converts 613, 622; merchants 616, 631; ? queen (Kahina) 489; rising 415, 696
jihād, holy war 532, 552, 594, 606, 620, 655, 657, 658, 662, 676; spiritual 657
jizya, poll tax (pagan) 514
 Joel, king 587
 Johannesburg 395
 Johansen, D. C. and Taieb, M. 21n.
 John, bishop of Nikiou 451 and n., 495, 496; *Chronicle* 495, 503, 708
 John, bishop of Tella 494
 John, count 442
 John II, patriarch 442, 443
 John the Almsgiver, patriarch 449
 John of Ephesus 444n., 448n., 561 and n., 713
 John Chrysostom, bishop 435
 John, prefect of Alexandria 497
 John the Deacon 558, 568
 John Tzimisces, general 620
 Johnson, A. C. 696
 Johnston, Sir H. H. 702
 Jolouta 334
 Jones, A. H. M. 434n., 704
 Jones, H. L. (ed. and trans.) 499n.
 Jones, N. 688
 Jos plateau 43, 66, 80
 Joseph, patriarch 578
 Joseph, exarch 560
 Josephus 118n., 203n.
 Jouguet, P. 696
 Juba, king 187 and n., 199, 288, 299; Juba II 190, 695
 Juba r. 373
 Juby, Cape 135
 Judah 95, 96
 Judaism 5, 7, 8, 414, 445, 460, 492, 530; Talmudic 537, 541
 Juddāla 654, 655, 657, 660, 661, 662, 663, 676
 judges, Egypt 152
 Judges, Council of (Carthage) 174
 judicial code 85; authority, Numidia 183; systems, Egypt 152
 Jugurtha 185, 186, 188, 201, 695
 Juhanyina Arabs 588
 Jukun 681
 Julia Mamaea (Empress) 419
 Julian, 'the Apostate', emperor 431, 470, 472, 473
 Julian, count 513
 Julian, presbyter 448–9; ? = Julian of Monophysite mission 566, 561
 Julian of Halicarnassus 443, 445
 Julien, C.-A. 711
 Junca 485
jund, army 523, 524, 551, 555, 597, 639; local garrisons 524, 528; military aristocracy 535, 595, 600; rebellions 534, 550
 Junius, clerk 465
 Junonia island 299
 Jurbaj al-Naṣrānī al-Ḥāris, 'the Christian, the guardsman' 591
 jurists, Muslim 565, 632, 655, 661, 668; *see also fuqahā'*
 jurisprudence 506, 657
 justice, Islamic 531–2; Ghana 668
 Justin I, emperor 443, 444
 Justin 120n., 693, 695
 Justinian, emperor 246, 444, 446, 447, 448, 485, 486, 561
 K/Ar *see* potassium-argon dating
 Ka'ba (Black Stone) 608, 611

INDEX

- Kabil/Kamil, king 581
 Kabondo 381
 Kabwe (Broken Hill) 35
 Kabyle Mts. 458, 478, 483, 627; Little Kabyle 600; tribes, chiefs, tribal kingdoms 458, 460, 473, 478, 483
 'kaffir potatoes' (*Coleus dazo* and *C. dysentericus*) 312
 Kafue Hook 408
 Kāfūr (Abū 'l Misk Kāfūr) 612, 613, 620, 621, 622
 Kagera r. 368
 Kāhina, 'the prophetess' 489, 509, 511, 512; sons 512
 Kahyā (Dahyā) 509
 Kairouan (Qayrawān): area 512, 513, 534, 535, 550, 551, 597; capital, seat of government 507, 520, 618, 620, 624, 625, 630, 636; control of city 507, 509, 521, 522, 611, 635, 641; control of provinces 641-2; food supply 616; foundation 507; governor 516, 517, 524; Jawhar 620, 622; military command, fortification 511, 524, 635; rebellion 524, 528, 553; trade routes 648, 649
 religion, law: Almoravids 656, 717; *fuqahā*, *qāḍī* 531, 539, 543, 594, 632, 650, 655, 657; *imām* 542, 611; mosques 544, 594; persecution 505, 657; religious capital 540, 542, 631, 656, 657, 658
 Kakulima, Mt 136, 298
 Kalabasha temple 258, 271; episcopal see 583
 Kalahari 52, 67, 343; margins 374, 396; San 67
 Kalahari-type sands 14, 38, 382
 Kalāji 497
 Kalambo Falls 31, 34, 67, 362, 364, 377, 378, 688; group 381; lake basin 377
 Kalbid dynasty 535n., 632
 Kalembe 688
 Kalenjin 369
 Kalomo culture 401; district 381, 408; mound sites 394; *see also* under pottery; Kalundu
 Kalundu 380, 381, 383, 408; mound 381, 382, 384, 408
 Kamabai 332
 Kamal, Yussuf 332n.
 Kambasuten 225
 Kamnama 379, 380
 Candake *see* Candace
 Kanem (Kānim) 639, 643, 667, 680-3, 716, 717
 Kanz al-Dawla 585, 586
 Kapwirimbwe 580, 581, 583
 Karabacek Jebel 709
 Karanog 258
 Karari industry 49
 Karima (modern) 211
 Karkamani, king 214
 Karkarichinkat 309, 317, 335
 Karnak 213, 319
 Karoo 64
 Kasa (? = Kush, Meroe) 260
 Kasai 344, 352, 397; Kasai r. 364
 Kashita, king 211, 217, 236
 Kasila (Kusayla) al-Burnusi 509, 511
 Katanga 49, 344, 352, 379, 397, 398, 401, 408, 702
 Katote 364, 397
 Katuruka 364, 365, 371
 Kavirondo Gulf 362, 369
 Kawa inscriptions 698; 'Kawa IX', king 221; mound 237; royal names 226, 242, 249; stela 214, 225; temples 221, 222, 224; tomb 221
 Kavar 291, 314, 638, 643
 Kawkaw 677
 Kaya-Magha, kingdom 673, 674
 Kayes 671
 Kayhidi 665
 Kayūna, battle 602
 Kedia d'Idjil 333
 'Keeper of the Seal' 582
 Kei r. 375
 Keller, C. M. 689
 Kendall, R. L. 350n.
 Kennett, J. P., Houtz, R. E. *et al.* (eds.) 17n.
 Kenya 59, 65, 67, 68, 74, 344, 350, 372; Central 352, 370; Eastern highlands 370; Northern 21; Rift 69, 73; Western Highlands 362, 364, 367, 368, 369, 370, 702
 Kenya Capsian 59, 69, 350
 Kenya, Mt 344, 369, 371
 Kenya Wilton 65
 Kerki 272
 Kerkis (? = Kurgus) 217
 Kerma 238
Kerstingiella geocarpa, earthenut 313
kehabar (pl. *akhbār*), 'information', family histories 493
 Khabbash 105, 225
 Khael, patriarch 569
 Khālid b. Ḥamid al-Zanāti 520, 525, 605
kehalifa (pl. *kehalafā*), successor of Muḥammad 516
 Khalifa b. Warrū 630, 632
kehalij, canal 622
 Khaliūt stele 216
kehalq, 'creation' (of the Koran) 538
kehammāsa, sharecropping by fifths 550

INDEX

- Khandaq 580
khārāj, land tax 514, 593
 Kharga oasis 98, 101, 592, 613, 650
 Kharijites, Kharijism (= Mubayyidūn, 'the Whites') Abū Yazid 618, 657; confession, doctrine 518, 521, 540, 555, 656, 658, 659; decline 526, 628; Ibadites 518, 522, 523, 641; al-Mushtari b. al-Aswad 645, 651; Sufrites 518, 642, 644
 Khartoum 268, 447, 536
khawārij (sing. *khārijī*), 'those who go out', rebels 518, 608
 Khazrūn b. Fulful 625; *see also* Banū Khazrūn
 Khimiya phase 305
Khijaf 595
 Khoi (= Hottentot) 66, 68, 374, 375, 376, 396, 702; culture 376; herding 375, 394; settlements 394
 Khoisan 66, 68, 69, 332, 396
 Khormusan 54
 Khor Nubt 572, 573
 Khumārawayh 597, 598n., 601
khums, fifth of booty 517
 Khurasan 512, 521, 641, 646; men of Khurasan 527
khutba, Friday sermon 544, 612, 634, 657
 al-Khwārizmī 651, 667, 677, 680, 716
 Kibish formation 35, 41; crania 69
 Kidād 644
 kidney beans 314
 Kienitz, F. K. 692
 Kilimanjaro 344
Kinanu, 'Canaanites' (Phoenicians) 87
 al-Kindī 515, 518, 533, 543, 547, 591, 601n., 613, 708, 715; terminology 511, 607
 kingdoms: Nubia 563; tribal (Berber) 484
 'king's mother' 581; king's friends, companions 229
 kings: Cyrenaica 110–13; Libya 111, 147; Nubia 90, 558, 568, 581, 586; Numidia 176, 177; Persia 99, 101; Sudanic 667, 677, 678, 681; Thera 110
 Kinkanga 367
 Kinshasa 363, 397
 Kintampo 71, 306, 331, 347; Kintampo culture 347
 Kinyps r. (? = Wadi Tareglat) 109, 127, 143
 kiosk Naqa 252–3; Philae 253
 Kiriakos, king 569
 Kirk, W. 302n.
 Kirwan, L. P. 260n., 264n., 561n.
 Kisale, lake 364, 398
 Kisangani 405
Kitāb Allāh, 'book of God', Koran 537
Kitāb al-Wulāt, 'History of the governors' 613
 Kivu, lake 367; province 362, 364, 366, 367, 401, 702
 Klassies River Cave 39, 53
 Klein, R. G. 39n., 53n., 689
 Kleomenes 106
kleroi (sing. *kleros*), allotments of land 151; *klerouchoi*, holders of *kleroi* 151, 152, 154, 155, 157
 Knipfing, J. P. 419n., 704
 knives: iron 674; stone 37, 51; knife blades, microlithic 59
 Knopf, R. and Krueger, G. (eds.) 464
 knuckle-walking 19
 kola 313, 314
 Kolluthos, bishop 580
 Kom Ombo 578
 Kondoa 364, 371
 Konjo people 405
 Koobi Fora formation 19n., 23, 27
 Koptos 499
 Koran 491, 537, 545, 597, 609, 656, 658, 660, 671, 682, 710; Berber 658; 'created Koran' 538, 539; Koranic inscriptions Kordofan 222, 310, 326, 338, 574, 674
 Koro Toro 327, 328, 329, 572
 Korosko, Bab el-Korosko 99, 220, 244
 Koubbel, L. E. 718; and Mateev, V. V. 716
 Koudaniel, king 586
 Kouga tumulus 321
 Kouroukoro-Kale 302, 337
 Kpembe 668
 Kramers, J. H. (ed.) 541n., 709, 715; and Wiet, G. (trans.) 541n., 709, 715
 Kraus, T. 253n.
 Krause, M. 580n.
 Kretzoi, M. 16n.
 Kronenberg, A. 581, 582n.
Krtm, battle 222
 Krugersdorp 689
 Kubinska, J. 714
-kuda (Nubian name-ending) 586
 Kudanbes, king 585, 586
 kudu 39
 Kufa 641
kuffār, unbelievers 512, 517
 Kufra oasis 420
 Kūgha, ruler of 653
 Kukiya 677, 679
 Kulthūm 520, 523, 525, 741
 Kumbi 340, 673, 674; Kumbi-Saleh 340, 666, 674, 717
 Kunene r. 401
 Kunta 637
 Kurgus 217
 Kurru 211, 213, 217, 229, 231, 233
 Kush 210–71, 692, 695, 696; culture 211,

INDEX

- Kush (*cont.*)
 258, 271, *see also* Meroe; Kushite
 dynasty (Egypt) 90, 91, 210
 Kushiya Province 100
 Kutāma Berbers 599n., 600, 603, 609, 610,
 625, 626, 629; forces in Egypt 607
 Kwale 370, 371; culture province 378; *see*
also under pottery
 Kwapong, A. A. 692
 Kyrana, Kyrene (= Cyrene) 108n.
 Kyros, bishop 576
- Laarchos 111
 Labezanga Falls 677
 Labi b. Wār-Jābi 676
 labour: free 471; slave, prisoners of war
 158, 339, 585
 labour services 434, 458, 499
 Labriolle, P. de 759
 Lactantius 463
 Lacumazes 180
 Laetolil 21
 Laga Oda, Ethiopia 86n.
 Lagenaria (gourd) 73
 Lajoux, J.-D. 690
 lakes: lake-levels 43n., 58, 61, 78, 686
 lakeside sites 372
 Saharan lakes 372
 Lakhideamani, king 231
 Lala 384
 Lalibela cave, Begemder 71
 Lamba 384
 Lambaesis 199, 201, 208, 459, 463, 501
 Lambert, Nicole 320-1 and n., 701
 Lamlam 670
 lamps, bronze (Attebubu) 295; pottery,
 Nubia 559; Roman 301
 Lamṭa 664
 Lamṭūna 653, 654, 662, 663, 665, 676
 Lancel, S. 706
 land: abandonment 197, 423, 536, 589;
 availability, shortage 360, 422, 480;
 control 195; holding, tenure, in Egypt
 151, 161, 422, 434, 439, 441-2; in
 North-West Africa 129, 550; in Nubia
 574; purchase 118; tax 197
 landowners, landlords: Egypt 422, 439,
 441-2, 500, 501, 536, 547, 589, 616;
 North-West Africa 457, 459, 471, 472,
 478, 480, 484; *see also* estates
 'land of the Blacks' 510
 'land of gold' 646
 land-bridges 16, 17
 land grants 89, 151, 527, 536, 578; *see also*
kleroi
 land survey 486
 Lane-Pool, S. 711
- Lange, D. 682-3 and n., 717
 language 29, 41, 69, 83, 152, 337; click
 sounds 342, 375; influences 376; learn-
 ing 376
 languages: Akan 348; Amharic 265; Arabic
 545, 548, 549, 573, 578, 643, modern
 use 268, 464, 548, official use, 511, 513,
 527, 546, sources 490, 493, 495;
 Aramaic 99, 415; Azer 660; Bantu 338,
 353-9, 363, 368, 375, 376, 405, 406,
 702, 703-4, ancestral, proto-Bantu 352,
 354, 355, 702, Central 348, 353, 357,
 400, eastern 353, southern 375, northern
 392, Bantu-speaking peoples 2, 342,
 368, 374, 376, 404, 405, non-Bantu 369,
 374; Bantu language zones 354-59;
 400-1, A and B 357, 358, 401, 402, 405,
 C 357, 358, 359, 364, 400, 401, 402, 404,
 405, 406, D 401, 404, 406, D-S 358,
 359, 364, 400, 407, L and M 355, 363,
 364, 400, H, K, and R 401, K, L, and R
 401; Beja 255, 256n.; Bemba 400;
 Benue-Congo 352, 354; 'Barbar' 510;
 Berber 141, 147, 203n., 464, 484, 546,
 643, 658; *see also under* Libyan; Birged
 268; Buguru 406; 'Bush' (click lan-
 guages) 342; *see also* Khoi, Khoisan,
 San, Sandawe (*below*); Central Sudanic
 353, 368, 404, 405, 406; Coptic, Egypt
 424, 429, 438, 450, 546, Nubia 560,
 563, 572, 573, 576, 580; Cushitic 351,
 352, 369, 373, 376, S. Cushitic 374;
 Egyptian 99, 141, 147, 151, 158, 195,
 221, 226, 241, 254, *see also* Coptic;
 Ekoid 348; Ethiopic 495, 708; French
 464; Ge'ez 260, 261, 265, 443; Ger-
 manic 356; Greek 87, Cyrenaica 198,
 Doric dialect 108n., Egypt 151, 152,
 153, 154, 194, 411, 438, 511, 546, Ethio-
 pia 264, 265, North-West Africa 184,
 451, 474, Nubia 271, 563, 572, 573,
 576, 580, sources 264, 490, 493; Hebrew
 152, 418, 451, 546, 712; Idoma 315;
 Indo-European 87; Latin, North-West
 Africa 202, 411, 431, 464, 470, 483,
 484 and n., 488, 510, 546, Nubia 257,
 Numidia 187, 189, sources 490;
 Kanembu 643, 680, *al-lughā al-Kānīmīyya*
 680; Khoi 342, 374, 375, 376, 397;
 Libyan 141, 202, 694; Luba 400;
 Malayo-Polynesian 351; Meidob 268;
 Mel 348; Meroitic 218, 226, 254-6 and
 n., 267-8, 271, 573, 698, 699; Ngibinda
 406; Nguni 397; Niger-Congo 348,
 353; Niger-Kordofanian 348, 354, 404,
 405, 406; Nilotic 351, 353, 368, 406;
 non-Bantu (E. African Coast) 374;

INDEX

- Nubian, Old Nubian 255, 256 and n., 563, 573, 576, 580, 588, 598, 712, 714, Hill Nubian 268, Kanzi dialect 586, Mahass dialect 574, River Nubian 268, 271, 574; Numidian 185; Paraniotic 351, 353, 368, 369, 406; Punic 87, Mauritania 189, North-West Africa, Libya 132, 175, 202, 203 and n., 464, 697, Numidia 177, 179–80, 182, 184, sources 177; Romance 356, 483, 485; San 342, 375, 376; Sandawe 376; 'semi-Bantu' 348, 354, 357, 702; Semitic 6, 87, 141, 262, 265; Soninke 666; Sotho-Tswana 397; Syriac 501, 561, 705, 713; Teda, Teda-Daza 680; Tigrinya 265; West Africa 338; Yoruba 315; Zaghāwa 680
- Laodicea 432
- Larache *see* Lixus
- Laribus, battle 602
- La Roncière, Ch. de 334n.
- late Stone Age: East Africa 350, 687, 690; Sahara 61, 272n., 390; southern Africa 374, 689, 690; West Africa 65, 66, 347; West Central Africa 401, 402; Zambia and Malawi 374, 379, 383, 688
- late Stone Age peoples 66, 67–8, 352n., 355, 360, 375, 396, 403, 407
- lateen sails 135
- later Iron Age 368–9, 384, 385, 396, 398
- Lateran palace 468
- 'Latin status' 202 and n.
- La Vallonet 30n.
- Law, R. C. C. 693, 697
- law: Egyptian 100, 161; Islamic, basis, schools 537–43, 604, 607, 622, 656, 660, 661; butchers 616, *fugabā'*, *qādi* 531–2, 594, 596–7, 607, 656, 660, origins 491, 506, 516, 530, taxation 590, 610, 660; Jewish 416, 530; Roman 499, 502, 503, 506 and n., 516
- Lawāta 489, 506, 621, 628, 633, 644
- laxity (Islam) 655–6, 659, 661
- Lazica (Black Sea) 450
- lead mining 595
- Leakey, L. S. B. 350n., 685, 686, 687; and M. 28, 690; and Owen, W. E. 687
- Leakey, Mary 26n., 32n., 687, 689; and L.S.B. 350n.; and Owen, W. E. and Leakey, L. S. B. 367n.
- Leakey, R. E. F. 23n.; and Walker, A. C. 24n.
- Leandros 166
- leather, leather-working 53, 277, 275, 550; leather documents 574, 586; *see also* hides and skins
- Lebanon (Republic) 6, 87, 149
- Lebda 489
- Lebeuf, J.-P. 322, 328 and n., 329n.
- Leclant, J. 284n., 325 and n., 701, 714
- legal systems 152, 695
- legatus* 192, 199, 205
- legio*, legion 192, 199; Third Legion 457, 464
- Leglay, M. 462n.
- legumes 71
- Lehringen 34
- Leipoldt, J. 705
- Le Kef *see* Sicca
- Lelesu 364, 371
- Leo, Pope 437, 438; *some* of Leo 437, 440, 450; Leo IX, Pope 546
- Leo I, emperor 440; Leo II 440
- Leo Africanus 317
- Leontopolis, temple 412
- leopard, leopard skins 220
- Leopard's Hill, Zambia 383
- Leopard's Kopje (Rhodesia) 388–9, 390, 394, 398; tradition 394, 396, 398
- Lepcis (= Lepcis Magna) 128n.; camels 288; decline, restoration 483, 486; Garamantes 200, 204, 286; hinterland 127, 486; Numidian kingdom 183–4, 186, 187; Phoenician city 109, 118, 127, 202, 203; routes 204, 286, 322; Severi 202, 290, 434, 486
- Lepsius, C. R. 699
- Leptis Magna *see* Lepcis
- Leptis (= Leptis Minor) 128 and n., 175
- Leschi, L. 466n.
- Lese people 404
- Lesotho 690
- Lesquier, J. 695, 697
- Letaba 393
- Le Tourneau, R. 711
- Letter of Barnabas* 414
- Leukon, battle 111
- Levallois technique 37 and n., 41, 42, 43, 47, 54; evolved Levallois 61
- Levallois-Moustierian 42
- Levant 87, 686
- Lévi-Provencal, E. 554n., 655n., 718
- Levtzion, N. 8, 618n., 638n., 669n., 717, 718
- Levy, R. 710
- Lewicki, T. 313n., 638n., 641, 642n., 643n., 644 and n., 710, 716, 717
- Lewis, B., Holt, P. M. and Lambton, A. K. S. (eds.) 710
- Lex Manica* 464, 483
- lexico-statistics 71
- Lézine, A. 545n., 712
- Lhote, H. 278n., 280, 287n., 291 and n., 303n., 305n., 690, 700
- Libby, W. F., 13n.
- libelli*, certificates 419 and n., 459, 704

INDEX

- Liberatus of Carthage 445, 486, 707
 Liberia 348
 library of Alexandria 152; of Carthage 184
Libu 141
 Libya 276, 279, 289, 507, 520, 628, 636, 709, 711; coastal area 630, 633; desert 246, 275, 638, 639; eastern 694
Libya exterior (western) 208; *Libya interior* (eastern) 208
 Libyans, Libyan-Berbers 80, 86, 289, 300, 301, 336, 337, 338, 694; assimilation, intermarriage 114–15, 132; horses, chariots 279, 281–3; influences 115, 132; merchants 533; metal-working 319, 322, 333; pastoralists 275; *silphion* collectors 110; slave-raiders 638; slaves 115, 132; soldiers, mercenaries 40, 89–90, 130, 131, 170
 Libyan-Berber period (rock art) 333, 337
 Libyans: relations with Carthage 121–32, 175; revolts (Carthage) 123, 131, 167, 170; relations with Greeks of Cyrenaica 96, 107, 108, 109, 114–16, 198; revolts (Cyrenaica) 111, 113, 165, 166–7
 West of Egypt 91, 98, 101; in Fezzan 127; in North-West Africa 458, 523
 ‘Libyans’ 89, 129
 Libyan pre-Aurignacian 36–7, 42
Libyarches (governor of Libya) 166
Libyes (= Libyans) 129, 141
 licences (sales) 195
 Licinius 426, 427, 468
 Lietzmann, H. 706
 Lilybaeum 168–9
limes, ‘frontier’ 201, 288, 290, 298, 300, 479, 480; beyond *limes* 300, 301
limes Tripolitanus 201
 Limpopo river, valley, drainage system 387, 389, 390, 392, 394, 396; area south of 362, 392, 393
 Lindsay, J. 696
 linen 94
 linguistic frontier 405, 557, 573; relationship 348
 Lion Temple: Meroe 242, 257, 326; Musawwarat es-Sofra 226, 227, 228, 253, 254; Naqa 251, 252, 253
 lions 220; stone 227, 240, 257
 Lister, F. C. 714
 literacy 2, 5, 140; in Egyptian 194; in Greek 184, 422; North Africa 205; Semitic languages 262
 literature: Arabic 516; Greek 194; Latin classics 470
 ‘liturgy’, civic obligation, labour service 195, 206, 422, 503
 liturgy (church) 580
 livestock 80, 129, 550; *see also individual animals*
 living sites 26, 28, 30, 32, 33
 Livingstone (town) 381, 382, 688
 Livingstone, D. (archaeologist) 14n.
 Livy 146n., 180n., 693, 695
 Lixus (= Larache, Loukkos) 118, 126, 128, 134, 188, 189, 292, 299; Lixus r. (? = Wadi Dar’a) 134, 139
 lizards 28
 Lochard 688
 Lockshoe industry 64
 Lolui island 367
 Lombard, M. 595n., 718
 Longinus, bishop 448, 561, 562
 ‘Lord of the Horses’ 582, 584, 585
 lost-wax process 338
 Lothagam 21
 lotus (decoration) 243; lotus flour 314
 Louata nomads 485
 Louis Trichardt 393
 Lourenzo Marques (Maputo) 390
 Lowe, C. van Riet 687
 Lower Egypt 89, 90, 102, 158, 497; *see also Delta*
 Lower Nubia *see* Nubia, lower
 Lualaba r. (Upper Congo) 364, 398
 Luangwa r.: area east of 379, 383; west of 380, 398; tradition (later Iron Age) 384, 398
 Lucas, A. and Harris, J. R. 323n., 325n.
 Lucilla 467
 Luke, St, Gospel 705
 Lukenga hill 67, 68, 687
 Lu’lu’, *ghulām* 596
 Lumley, H. de 30n.
 Lunda (eastern) 384
 Lungu 384
 Lupemban industrial complex 48, 49, 50, 65
 Lusaka 381
 Luxor 415
 Luxorius 483
 luxury goods 80, 219–20, 259, 270, 669, 670
 Lycopolis 157, 158, 425, 428; Bp. 425, 428
 Lydia in Asia Minor 91, 98
 Maatjes r. 64
 Mabveni 387, 408
 Macadam, M. F. L. 698
 Macarius 472
 McBurney, C. B. M. 42n., 287n., 307n., 317n., 686, 694; and Hey, R. W. 52n.
 macchia vegetation 32, 39, 78
 Macedonia, Macedonians 105, 106, 148, 149, 152, 158, 424
 Machili Forest Station 377, 382, 383

INDEX

- machimoi*, 'warriors', Egypt 90, 96, 104, 151, 157, 503
 MacIver, D. Randall *see* Randall MacIver
 Macomades 463
 Macrinus, emperor 202n.
 macrolithic industries 54, 61
 Mactar (Tunisia) 482n., 486
 Madagascar 351, 352
 Madasa 314
 Madaura, Madauros 474, 483n.
 Madeira 134, 299
madbāhib (sing. *madhbāb*), 'roads along which to go', Schools of Law 540, 541, 594
 Madinat al-Salām (= Baghdad), 'City of Peace' 526, 527, 529
 Mafākhir al-Barbar 664–5 and n.
 Magas (stepson of Ptolemy I) 165
 Maggs, T. M. O'C. 66n., 702
 Maghāriba (sing. Maghribi), 'Westerners' 607, 608, 609
 Maghrāwa 605, 606, 611, 614, 623, 625, 626, 663, 664
 Maghrib 8, 333, 336, 488, 513, 607, 646, 685, 694, 709; Stone Age 35, 42, 43, 53, 58, 60, 64, 70, 75, 686; Muslim, Almoravid 659, 663, 719; communities in Sahel 649; conquest 505–13, 638, 663, 683; governors 504, 513, 517, 641; rulers 516, 521, 595, 599n., 601, 624, 628; sects 518, 540, 549, 665, 717; trade 619, 641; *see also* North-West Africa
 Central 627, 650, 677; eastern 9; western 525
 Maghrib al-Aqṣā (= Morocco) 512, 619, 624, 637, 638, 647, 648, 658
 magistrates, Roman 191
 magnetite 323
 Mago, family 120, 122; 'traveller' 127, 284 and n.; author of farming manual 130
 Magosi 687; 'Magosian' 48, 687
 Maguira 328
 Magumi 683
 Maharraqa (= Hierosykaminos) 193, 258
 Mahdi, 'rightly-guided one' 555; Sa'id b. Husayn = 'Ubayd Allah 600, 601n., 602, 603, 604, 605, 606, 610, 647; roval Mahdi in Zab 603, 609; Yūnus 555
 al-Mahdiya, 'city of the Mahdi' 604, 610, 611, 618, 624, 625, 629, 635, 636
 Mahjoubi, A. 509n.; and Slim, H. and Belkodja, K. 711
 Maḥmūd, Aḥmad Bakir (ed.) 660n.
maḥram, letter of immunity 682
mai, 'king' (Bornu) 681, 682; Mai Humai 682
 Mainarti 570, 573
 Mainz 457
 maize 315, 402
 Majabat al-Koubra 272, 275
 Majorinus, bishop 467, 468
 Makai 109, 113, 142, 143
 Makapan 689
Makaron nesoi, Canary Islands 300
 Makuria (= Maqurra) 447, 448, 561, 562, 565, 567, 568
māl, 'wealth' 589
 Malagarasi r. 372
malagueta (*Aframomum melegueta*) 313
 Malal 671, 672, 675, 682
 Malapati 387, 393
 malaria 343
 Malawi: Stone Age 65, 688, 690; Early Iron Age 362, 372, 374–86, 395, 397, 688, 702; later Iron Age 388
 Malawi, lake 380, 403, 688; area east of lake 380; west of lake 383; plateau 688
 'Malchus' 119, 120, 128
 male-domination 84
 Malenaqen, king 214, 217
 Maleqerebar, king 231
 Malewibamani, king 214, 221, 222
 Malhomme, J. 319 and n.
 Mali, ancient 314, 341, 672–3; modern republic 68, 311, 677
 Mālik b. Anas (of Medina) 531, 539, 656, 660; Māliki school, Malikites 539, 540, 541, 629, 656, 684, 718; of Kairouan, Ifriqiya 629, 657, 658, 659, 660, 661, 664, 665; of Sijilmasa 614
 al-Māliki 509, 709
 Malinke 671, 672
malo, rice 312
 Malta 117, 124
 Mambwe 384
mamlūk (pl. *mamālik*) 529, 638, 639
 Mamluks 584, 585, 586
 Ma'mūn b. Hārūn al-Rashīd 533, 534, 535, 538, 593, 651
 man, modern 54, 69
 'Man of Chad' 335
 Mānān 680, 681
 Mande group 338; Mande Sudan 339
 Mandingo territory 314
 Manekweni 390
 Manetho 153, 154
Mangifera indica, mango 314
 mango (*Mangifera indica*) 314
 Mangurto people 260
 Manichees, Manichaeism 423, 457, 474, 477
 Mann, A. E. 26n.
 Manna dynasty 676
mano, rice 312
 al-Manṣūr, caliph 526, 651n.; Ismā'il al-Manṣūr 611, 614; Manṣūr b. Buluggīn 625, 626; Manṣūr al-Tunbudhi 534

INDEX

- al-Manṣūriya 611
 manuports 28 and n.
 manuring 80
 Manyara, lake 369
 Manyema 344
 Mapungubwe 390
maqamiya, 'fighters' 503, 504
 Maqiden (lady) 216
 al-Maqrizi: on Egypt 529 and n., 547 and n., 590 and n., 593 and n., 708; on Nubia 558, 565, 566–7 and n., 579, 586, 712; Sudan 317
 Maquet, E. 702
 Maqurra *see* Makuria
 marabouts, maraboutism 675–6
 Marathon, battle 101
 Marçais, Georges 494, 711, 712
 Marçais, William 510–11
 Marcellinus, Tribune and Imperial Notary 477
 Marcellinus, Ammianus 288
 Marcian, emperor 438, 440
 Marcillet-Jaubert, J. 470n.
 Marcion 456
 Marcium of Heracles 297
 Marea 91
 Marendet 322
 Mareotis, lake 414
 Margoliouth, D. S. 545n.
 Marianos, bishop 580
 Ma'rib, Ma'rib dam 634, 635, 636
 marine resources 42, 53, 63, 64, 77, 689
 Maris, 'the South' (= Nobatia) 568
 al-Marisi (of Upper Egypt or Nubia) 591
 maritime expansion 87; contacts 100, 106, 292–301, 700
 Marius 186, 187, 189
 market economy 525, 550, 551, 596, 615 and n.
 market places 373, 471, 649, 674, 677
 Markos, eparch of Nubia 568; king of Nubia 589
 Marks, A. E. 58n.
 Markus, R. A. 487n., 707
 Marlowe, J. 695
 Marmaridai 142, 147, 165, 198, 206
marco, rice 312
 marriage, intermarriage, marriage customs 150, 375, 397, 403, 597, 608, 656 and n.
 Marsā Farūkh 524, 553
 Marseilles 297; *see also* Massalia
 marshes, draining 154
 Martha, Queen-mother 575
 Martin, V. (ed.) 705
 martyrs, martyrdom 452, 453, 457, 460, 462, 466 and n., 467, 487; North-West Africa 417, 455, 462, 464, 473; tombs, shrines 472, 474; Sunni 538
 Marwān II, caliph 503, 521, 522, 569
 Marxist interpretation 718
 Masaesylii tribe 143, 147, 172, 179, 181, 182, 188
 Masai steppe 371
mas'ala, 'question' 539
 Mašāla b. Ḥabūs 606
 Masatat (Massa) 299
 Mashāriqa (sing. Mashriqi), 'Easterners' 607
 Mashonaland 390, 408
 Māsin (province of Ghana) 653
 Masinissa 144, 182, 183, 184, 189; education 180, 184; relations with Rome 131, 173, 174, 175, 180, 181, 185; sons 182, 183, 184
 Masinissa II 187
 Masinissa, sanctuary of 288
 Masitholos c. 300
masjid, 'place of worship', mosque 544
 Maslama 520
 Mašmūda people 554, 664
 Mason, R. J. 393, 395 and n., 689, 702; and Klapwijk, M. and Evers, T. M. 393n.
 Maspero, P. 705
 Massa 300, 554, 595; Masatat, 299
 Massalia (= Marseilles) 120, 134
 Massawa 156; *see also* Adulis
 Massūfa 651, 652, 663
 Massylics people, kingdom 143, 146n., 147, 172, 173, 178, 179, 180, 181, 188
 mastaba 233
 Mastanabal, son of Masinissa 183, 184; sons of 185, 186
 Mastar 410
 mastic mounting 59
 Mas'ūd b. Wānūdīn al-Zanāti al-Maghrawī, *amir* 664
 al-Mas'ūdi 392, 409, 591 and n., 645–6 and n., 651n.
 Matadi 295
 Matakoma (Happy Rest) 393, 396
 Matara 262
 matchets, stone 41
 Maternus, Julius 286 and n., 289, 290, 300
 Mathos 170
 Matopan 65
 matrilineal, maternal succession 146, 213, 581, 669
 mats 360
 Mau Summit 369
mauloi (= mawali) 502
 Mauny, R.: aggrey beads 295 and n.; agriculture 10, 312 and n., 313 and n., 343 and n., 701; bibliography 701; cattle etc. 317n.; chariots 283, 700; human types 336 and n.; iron working 10, 325

INDEX

- and n.; Kougha tumulus 321 and n.; Kumbi Saleh 717; navigation 135 and n., 137, 140, 300 and n., 301 and n., 700
- Mauretania: kingdoms 177, 187, 188–91, 695, 696; Roman 148, 199, 200, 202, 203, 204, 208, 209, 697; Roman Provinces 192, 199, 201, 209, 513, 516; Christian period 462n., 471, 477, 478, 484; Christian bishops 469; Idrisids 554
- Mauretania Caesariensis 199, 206, 208, 209, 470n., 481, 488; Mauretania Sitifensis 208, 458, 462n., 463, 486; Mauretania Tingitana 199, 208, 209, 526
- Mauri (Greek *Maurousioi*), 'Moors': kingdoms, tribes 121, 129, 143 and n., 144, 147, 176–8, 180, 186, 188–90; mercenaries 125, 131, 175
- Mauritania (modern) 143 and n., 293, 333, 340, 665; Copper Age 145, 320, 321, 322, 332, 333, 701; Kumbi Saleh 341; Tegdaust 618, 649; Tichit 71, 275, 304
- Maurice, emperor 449
- mawālī* (sing. *mawālā*), 'clients' 502–4, 507, 511–12, 513, 518, 528, 532, 597, 601; revolt 591
- mawāṣim* (sing. *mawṣim*), 'seasons', seasonal caravan 615
- mawālā* see *mawālī*
- Maxentius, emperor 426, 467
- Maximian, emperor 467
- Maximian, kinsman of Donatus 475; Maximianists 476
- Maximianopolis 288
- Maximilian, martyr 464
- Maximin, emperor 425, 426
- Maximinus, emperor 205, 206, 457
- Maximus, Confessor 488
- maydān*, open space 593
- Maysara al-Midghari (or al-Matghari) 518, 520, 555
- Maysūr 606, 607, 610
- Mazaetullus 180
- Mazalim*, 'complaints', appeals 532
- Mazard, J. 695
- Mbande 380
- Mbum people 406
- Mdaga 328
- meat 318, 409, 616; cows' meat 103, 115, 146; butchery 26–7, 33, 51
- meat-eating 19, 27–8, 660
- Mecca 502, 505, 533, 551, 593, 608, 611; direction 544; Mecca and Medina, school (Mālikī) 539, 600, 607
- Mecha-Afalou race 58, 59, 68, 69
- Mechta Azrou 471
- Meded people 222, 223
- Medes 95, 98, 177
- Medieval Arabic Sources* 653, 655
- medicines 301
- Medina 502, 533, 539, 600; see also under Mecca
- Medinet Sbat 321
- Mediterranean culture, influences 8, 9, 244, 277, 301, 322, 323, 341, 649; agriculture 310; environment, species 38, 60; imports (Nubia) 244, 259, 263, 270; visitors 244
- Mediterranean sea 5, 17, 70, 345, 554; central 550, 557, eastern 42, 149, western 116, 124, 148, 512, littoral, coastlands 41, 54, 76, 79, 333, 525, routes 95, 290, 596; control 116, 148, 149, 490, 657
- 'Mediterranean' peoples 80, 83, 336; 'proto-Mediterranean' peoples 69
- Medjerda valley 68, 465, 629
- Medracen 484
- Megabari 246
- 'Mega-Chad' 272
- megafauna 689
- megaliths, Senegambia 312 and n.; Tondidarou 341
- Megalophanes 165
- Meinardus, O. M. 569 and n.
- Meinarti island 559
- Meinhof, C. 702
- meizon* (title) 582
- melek*, king 119, 177
- Meletius, bishop 425, 426, 429, 431; Meletians 427, 428, 429, 430, 431, 705
- Melilla 606; see also Rusaddir
- Melka Kunture 687
- Melkite (Orthodox) Church 497, 557, 562, 563, 580; patriarch (Alexandria) 496; mission to Nubia 561
- melons 314
- Melqart, god 132, 178
- Melville Koppies 395
- Memphis: archaism, pyramids 91, 103; army siege 92, 97, 102; city, capital 97, 99, 105, 106, 150, 157, 159
- 'men of the pen' 613, 614
- Menas, patriarch 446
- Menas, prefect 497
- Mendes, chief of 104, 105
- Menephtah, Pharaoh 319
- Mengin, F. 549n.
- mental ability 82
- mercenaries: in Carthaginian army 169, 170, 178, mutiny 170, payment 169; Gallic 125; Greek 125, 170; Italian 125, 170; Libyan 170; of Sittius 189
- in Egypt 92, 94, 96; Carian 216; Greek 97, 104, 151, 216
- merchants see traders
- merchants (*equites*) 191

INDEX

- mercury, pool of 597
 Merighi, A. 693, 697
 Merkurios, king 568, 569, 575
 Merkurios, bishop 580
 Meroe: agriculture 311n.; cattle 221; iron-working 326–7, 333, 334, 362, 701
 cemeteries 233, 236, 239, 241; burial mounds 266; *see also* pyramids
 kingdom 103, 193, 210–259; decline 256–71, 447, 556, 563; kings 105, 158, 193, 121–3, 256, 261, 266; king-lists, chronology 211, 213–14, 226, 227, 230–1, 249; relations with Rome 193, 194, 245–52
 town 99, 156, 221, 222, 234–6, 239, 256, 259, 260, 262, 557; royal residence 96, 221–3, 224, 238, 239
 Meroe, island of 221
 Meroitic civilization, culture 218, 231, 242–3, 254, 259, 266, 267, 271, 698; influences in Africa 698; objects in Aksum 265; period 212, 218, 556; style 221, 560
 Merowe (modern) 211
 ‘mesolithic’ 72
 Mesopotamia 195, 196, 316
 Messad *see* Castellum Dimmidi
 Messana 168
 Messiah, Christian 607
 Messo 328
 Mesutire’ (Cambyse) 99
 metallurgy, metal technology 383, 384, 385, 398, 666; *see also under* iron
 metals 138, 145, 303, 318; metal tools 275, 342; metalwork 262; *see also individual names*
 Metanoia monastery 442
 Metaurus r., battle 172
 Metropolitan (Faras) 576
 Meulenare, H. de 692
 Meynard, C. Barbier de, and Courteille, P. de 591, 646n.
 Mez, A. 533n.; 541, 545n., 710
 Mézières, A. Bonnel de 340
 Michael, patriarch (*Life*) 522, 558, 568, 569
 Michalowski, K. 559n., 560n., 714, 715
 Micipsa 183, 184, 695
 micro-burin technique 59
 microlithic industries 54, 59, 61, 65, 347, 360; blade 64; geometric 59
 Middle Egypt (‘the Seven Nomes and the Arsinoite Nome’) 194
 Middle Stone Age *see under* Palaeolithic
 middlemen, agents 616
 Midrār (= al Muntaṣir b. al-Yasa’ b. Abu ‘l-Qāsim) 645; Midrārīds 647
 Migne, P. G. (ed.) 424n., 706
 migration 327, 375; *see also under* population
 miḥna, inquisition 538, 539
 Mikhāsa people 525, 605, 606, 644
 Mila 600
 Milan 474, 475
 Mileham, G. S. 713
 milestones, Roman 458 and n.
 Miletos 92
 Miliana 611
 military commanders, Rome 207; dictatorship, Rome 191; occupation, Numidia 201; organization, Egypt 695, 696; North-West Africa 697; power, Carthage 125, Nubia 565, 572
 milk, milking 79, 138, 318, 358, 396; milk-drinking 660; milk products 79, 80
 Millar, F. 203, 422n., 698; and others 696
 Miller, S. F. 688
 millet 10, 81, 276, 277, 311 and n., 313, 314; *Pennisetum* 343, 344, 346, 349n., 385, 402; *Eleusine* 349n., 350
 Millet, N. B., 258n.
 Milne, J. G. 696
 Miltiades, bishop 468
 Milveis: martyrs 466; Optatus of 472; Faustus of 484
 Milvian Bridge, battle 426, 467
 minaret, square 544
 miners (iron ore) 393
 mining Ifriqiya 595; Morocco 595
 ministers 669
 Miocene desiccation 17
 Miocene/Pliocene 19
 miracle-worker 661
 Miranda, A. H. (ed.) 663n., 718
 Miriam, Queen-mother 577
 Miṣr (= Egypt) 501
 miṣr (pl. *amṣār*), caravan halt, settlement for government 501, 507, 511, 526, 544
 missionaries, Muslim, Fatimid 614, 625, *see also* *dā’i*; Almoravid 659–61; Ibadite 641
 missionary activity, Christian, in Egypt 411, 430, 443, 448–9; absence in North-West Africa 479; Arian on Danube 481
 missions, Christian, to Nubia 557, 559, 560, 561, 713; to Ethiopia 587
 Mitchell, B. M. 693
 mithqāl 669
 mixed farming 76, 79
 Mili (Gemellae) 201
 mobility 64, 67, 78
 Moeller, A. 404n.
 Mogadishu 314
 Mogador island (= Soueira island, *Cerne contra Atlantem*) 118, 128, 137, 140, 190, 292, 293, 298, 321

INDEX

- Moji 272
 molluscs 57, 77; freshwater 77; *Helix* sp. 60
 Mombasa area 362n., 369, 370, 374
 Mommsen, T. 696
 Momvu people 404
 Monarchianism 418
 monarchy, absolute 527
 monasteries: Egypt 411, 428, 429, 431, 433, 434, 435, 446, 448–9, 567, Upper Egypt 570; Ethiopia 443; North-West Africa 480, 482; Nubia 580
 monastic landholding 441–2, 499; opinion 437
 monasticism 428, 431, 433, 704, 705, 706; Meletian 429; Pachonian 431, 443, 446
 Monceaux, P. 464n., 466n., 707
 'monergist' compromise 449–50
 Montès, H. 717; (ed.) 709
 Mongo people 406
 monkeys 19
 monks 414, 424, 435, 549; Egyptian Coptic 431, 433, 435, 436, 438, 449, 580; Pachomian 429, 433, 439, 442, 448; Byzantine 570
 Monneret de Villard, U. 559 and n., 712, 713
 Monnica (mother of Augustus) 473, 475
 Monod, Th. 284n., 308n., 700
 Monophysite council 444; leaders 443; mission 560, 561; vestments 576
 Monophysitism 7, 433, 437, 494–6; Armenian 445; Egyptian 416, 438, 440, 443, 444, 448; Ethiopian 443, 445; Nubian 447, 448, 557, 561, 563–4, 568, 713; Syrian 444
 monopolies, Hellenistic Egypt 154, 155, 195; natron mining 590; trade, Sabaeans 150
 monotheism 6, 7, 460
 Monotheletes 488
 Montague Cave 48, 687
 Montanists 456
 Montefiore, H. W., 415n.
 Monteil, Ch. 673n., 717
 Montengerand, photographer 308n.
 moon deity (Libya) 145, 146
 Moors 333
 Moorsel, H. van 687
 Mopti 302
 Morgan, W. B. 302n., 310n.
 Morocco 637, 662, 684, 693; Atlas 525, 554; Atlantic plains 658; coast 100, 118, 122, 123, 128, 134, 297, 299–300, 525, inner 553, 554, northern 298, 553, 616, 626, 628, southern, south-western 280, 322, 541, 644, Almoravids 656, 658, 660, 666
 copper age 145, 319–20, 330, 595; historians 664; Jews 451; rulers 553, 614, 636, *see also individual names*; Stone Age 35, 37, 39; trade routes 648, 650, 676
 mortars 307
 Mortcha 272
 Mortelmans, G. 687
 mosaic 478 and n.
 Moscati, S. 691
 mosque 544; mosques 513, 532, 541, 544, 573, 585, 596, 597, 604, decoration, form 544, 618
 mosques: Cairo, al-Azhar 622; Cordoba, 'Abd al-Rahmān 544; Damascus, Great Mosque 515, 544; Fustāt, 'Amr 501, 505, 544, 593, 604, Ibn Tūlūn 593, 601; Gao 678; Ghana 668; Kairouan, Great Mosque 544, 660, 'Uqba 544; Jerusalem, al-Aqṣā 544; al-Mahdiyya, Great Mosque 640; Samarra 544; Sedrata 618; Sousse, Great Mosque 544, 552; Tunis, Zaytūna 544
 Mosul 608, 609
 Motya (Mozia), Sicily 117
 Motylinski, A. de C. (ed.) 624n., 709
 moufflon 318
 Moulouya r. 131, 143, 176, 183, 186, 188, 553
 mound graves, Nubia 266, 267, 268
 mountain peoples, North-West Africa 480, 484, 485, 535, 551, 554; *see also* Aures; Kabyle Mts.
 mountains, valleys, escarpments 344, 361
 Mount Carmel 39
 Mousterian 36, 37, 42, 43, 51
 Mozambique 374, 390, 393, 397, 685, 702; coast 394, 395; north 380; south 388
 Mozarabs 545
 Mshatta, 'winter palace' 526
 Msila 606, 610, 611, 623, 627
mu'askar, 'the camp' 527
 Mu'awiya (1st Umayyad ruler) 505
 Mu'awiya b. Hudayj 506, 507
 Mubayyidūn, 'the Whites' 518
 mud building 338
Mudawwana of Sahnūn 539
muwazzin 668
mufti (giver of *fatawa*, 'opinion') 541, 543
Mūhajirūn (*moagaritai*), 'emigrants', sons of Hagar, those who made *hijra* 502, 503
 al-Muhallabi 655, 677, 678, 680 and n., 681 and n., 683, 716
 Muhallabids *see* Yazīd b. Ḥātim
 Muḥammad, prophet 499, 502, 516, 537, 539, 545, 600, 658, 663; biography (*sira*) 491, 590; descendants 521; *see also individual names*

INDEX

- Muhammad I (Kairouan) 539, 594; Muhammad II 594, 595
 Muhammad (cousin of Ibrahim II) 597, 598
 Muhammad b. al-Ḥaṣan 629, 630
 Muhammad b. al-Khayr 623
 Muhammad b. Khazar (Ibn Kahzar) 606, 611, 614
 Muhammad b. Nānī 682
 Muhammad b. Sulaymān 601
 Muhammad Tārashnā (Tarsina) *see* Tārashnā
 Muhammad b. Ṭughj b. Juff (Ibn Ṭughj) 608, 609, 612, 613, 621, 715
 Muhammad b. Yazīd 504
 Muhammad al-Qummi 578
muhṭasib, market overseer 615
 al-Mu'izz li-Dīn Allah, 'he who is mighty by the religion of God' 579, 611, 614, 618, 620, 622, 624, 628, 632
 Mu'izz b. Bādīs (grandson of al-Mu'izz) 629, 630, 632, 633, 634, 635, 636, 639, 657
mujāhidun, fighters in *jihād* 532
 Muktafi, caliph 601
 Mukhtār b. al-Qāsim al-'Arabi 629, 630
 Mukinanira rock shelter 367
mukūs, taxes 590
mulatbammun 665
 Müller, K. 693, 696
mulūk al-tawā'if, kinglets, 'party kings' 628, 663
 Mumbwa Caves 53, 688
mu'min, 'faithful' 502
 mummification (Meroe) 222, 233, 234
munāṭafa, share-cropping by halves 550
munḡungu, shea butter nuts 67
 municipalities, municipal office, Egypt 421, 425, 696; North-West Africa 202, 697; Numidia 154; *see also* 'liturgy'
 Mu'nis b. Muzaḥfar, eunuch 603, 604, 607
 Mu'nis b. Yaḥyā 635
 Munro (Transvaal) 52
 Munson, P. 275, 302, 304 and n., 305, 308, 316n., 701
 al-Muntaṣir b. al-Yasa' b. Abu 'l-Qāsim (= Mīdrār) 645
 Muntaṣir b. Khazrūn 589, 632, 633, 634
 al-Muqaddasī 510
 'al-Muqawqas', 'financial superintendent' (= Bishop Cyrus) 496
 Muqtadir, caliph 603, 607, 608
murābiṭ, holy man 552; *murābiṭūn*, people of *ribat* 532, 549, 551, 657, 659, 662, 665; (= nomads) 659
 al-Murādī 517, 520
 Murchison Falls 268
 Murdock, G. P. 302 and n., 310, 312, 701, 702
 Mureybit (Syria) 278
murji'a, 'postponement'
 Murji'ites 521
 Mūsā b. Abī 'l-'Afiya 606
 Mūsā b. Bugha 596
 Mūsā b. Nuṣayr 511, 512, 513, 518, 524, 526, 554
Musa sapientum var. *paradisica*, plantain 314
 Musawwarat 'es-Sofra 226, 228, 238, 241, 242, 253, 255, 256, 257
 Musawwidūn, 'the Blacks' 521
 Musengezi tradition 390
 Museum, 'temple of the Muses' 152, 160, 166
 al-Mushtarī b. al-Aswad, 'the Black' 645 and n., 651 and n.
 muskrats 53
muslim (pl. *muslimūn*), 'one who submits' 501, 502, 503, 504, 507, 509; allies 509, 517, 520
 Muslim confessions 540; conquest of Egypt 451; East 638, 642; historians 588; influence 334; law, origins 491, *see also* under law; liturgy 658; revolution 555; scholars, scholarship 7, 607
 al-Muslimānī, king of Malal 671, 672
 Muslims in Awdaghust 649; Gao 678; Ghana 668, 669; Kumbi Saleh 674; Nubia 557, 566, 567, 573; Yaresnī 671
 Musta'in, caliph (Tunis) 544
 Mustanṣir, caliph 634
musta'ribūn, 'claiming to be Arabs', Mozarabs 545
 Musulami 200
 Musurillo, H. A. 455n., 696, 707
 Mu'taḍid, caliph 597, 598
 Mu'tamid, caliph 596, 597
 Mu'taṣim b. Ma'mān, caliph 534, 535, 544, 577, 587, 593
 Mutawakkil, caliph 538, 578, 589, 590
mu'tazila, 'separation' (= I'tizāl) 521
 Mu'tazilites 521, 525, 526, 538, 539
 Muṭṭawī'ūn, 'volunteers', irregulars 551
 Muwaffad 593
 Muwaffaq 596, 597
muwālāt, creation of *wala*, clientship 503
muwalladūn, 'brought up as Arabs' 545
Muwaffa 531, 536, 539, 660
 Mwavarambo's village 380
 myrrh 288
 myth 588, 636, 679
 Mzimvubu r. 375
 Nachikufan 65, 688
 Nafūsa people 644
 Nafzawa 642, 644
 Nag-Hammadi 415 and n., 705

INDEX

- Naghez phase 305
 nails, iron 674
 Naivasha, lake 369
 Nakapapula rock shelter 379
 al-Nakhhās, 'the drover' 639
 Nakuru, lake 369; Nakuru/Naivasha basin 687
 Naligeru 668
 Nallino, C. (ed.) 535n.
 names, name-endings 438, 548, 586
 Namibia (South-West Africa) 374, 702
 Nande people 405
 Napata 210–19, 222, 231, 238–9, 242, 247–8, 250, 271, 325, 326; kings, king-making 90, 221, 224–5, 238; pottery 326; town 82, 211, 224
 Naqa 221, 237, 242, 251, 252, 253, 254, 255
 Naqrinsan (?), king 230
 Naraggara, battle 173
 Naravas 170, 179, 180n.
 Narok 372
 Narses 447
 narthex 570
 Nasakhma, king 214
 Nasamones 113, 116, 127, 142, 144, 146, 198; young Nasamoninas 283–4, 300
 Našir 586
 Nastasen, king 105, 214, 217, 223, 224, 225, 226, 227, 228, 254
 Natal 47, 395
 nationalism, xenophobia 97, 101, 102, 157, 196, 438, 443, 446
 native Egyptians (Ptolemaic Egypt) 150, 151, 153, 154, 156, 157, 158, 160
 Natron, lake 369
 natron mining 590
 natural zones: Delta 533; North-West Africa 534
 Naukratis 92, 93, 94, 97, 102, 106, 109, 110, 152, 194
 naval base 604; battle 121; power 95, 98, 149, 169, 172, 173
 'Nazarenes' 452, 591
 ndama, cattle 316
 Ndola 380
 Ndora 367, 371
 Neanderthal man, *Homo sapiens neanderthalensis* 35, 39, 42; Neanderthaloids 59, 69
 Near East 5, 6, 9, 30, 39, 302, 303, 310, 311, 319, 701
 Nebuchadnezzar 95
 Necho of Sais, father of Psamtek, Necho I 90, 325; Necho II, son of Psamtek 95 and n., 97, 100, 296
 Nef'aurud ('Nepherites'), XXIX dynasty 104; Nef'aurud II 104
 Nefusa 489; *see also* Jebel Nefusa
 Negro peoples 80, 83, 342, 344, 373; origins 65, 69; Sudanese 68; in North-West Africa 650; *see also under* human types
 negroid population, peoples 86, 335, 336
 Nekhtarehbe (Nektanebos) 105
 Nekhtnebef (Nektanebes) 104
 Nelson, C. M. and Posnansky, M. 687
 Nema 666, 673, 674
 Nenquin, J. 366n., 397n., 398 and n., 687, 702, 703
 Neolithic 49, 55, 66, 69, 70–82, 329, 332, 352, 360, 686; late, end 68, 81, 86, 272, 339, 341; sites 287, 318, 332; villages 275, 304, 308, 321, 339
 Caspian tradition 75–6; North-West Africa 307; Ntereso 331; Sahara/Sudan 77, 272 and n., 292, 301, 307, 317, 332, 336
 'neolithic' traits 61, 66, 74, 75–6 690; culture 145, 332; 'hoe Neolithic' 348
 Neo-Platonists 418, 474
 Nepos of Arsinoe 421
 Nero, emperor 256, 286
 Neshor 96
 Nesimi 143n.
 Nestorius 435, 436, 437, 439, 441
 Netekamani, king 250, 250, 251, 252, 253, 254, 255, 256, 265
 New Carthage (Cartagena) 171, 172
 'New Constantine' 568
 New Kingdom *see under* Egypt
 N'gaous (= Nicivibus) 487
 Ngbandi people 406
 Ngbinda 405, 406
 n'gher (Berber), 'river' 143n.
 Ngoni 384
 Ngulu mts. 371
 Nguni 395, 396
 Ngwenya (Swaziland) 393
 Niafunke/Goundam, Niafunke/Timbuktu area 321, 341
 Nias 300
 Nicaea, Council 427, 429, 432, 469; 2nd Council 429; Creed, formula 429, 431, 432, 440, 441
 Nicephorus Phocas, emperor 620, 622
 nickel 323
 Nicivibus (N'gaous) 487
 Nielson, O. V. 270n.
 Nifen-Nisir 472
 Niger (modern Republic) 321, 332, 677
 Niger r., valley 143n., 321, 677, 671; Niger Bend 280, 284, 321, 554, 595, 619, 644, 650, 671; Middle 80, 321; Middle Delta 312; Upper 301, 302–3, 310, 673
 Nigeria 49, 65, 68, 332, 334, 337, 347, 348,

INDEX

- Nigeria (*cont.*)
 686; Central 81, 330; south 338; north 354, 362; *see also individual places*
- Nigris or Nigeir r. 143 and n.
- Nigritae 139, 143, 145, 284
- Nikokrates 166
- Nikon 373
- Nile: Canopic branch 92; east bank 447; junction, Blue/White Niles 266, Nile/Atbara 218, 222, 260, 266, River/Delta 501; lower 84, 310; middle 362; Pelusian branch 92; source 256; Victoria Nile 368; *see also Delta*; Upper Nile
 area east of 256, 300, 558; west of 621
 dependence on 438, 500, 621; flood 422, 456, 519, 620, 629
 Nile/Congo watershed 80, 366
 Nile/Red Sea canal 95 and n., 100, 155
- Nile Valley: agriculture, domestication 9, 71, 75, 76, 302, 303, 310, 317; attack, control 102, 260, 265, 578, 603-4; camels 287; Dynastic civilization 85, 421; evidence 3, 4; food resources 56; horses 278; Islam 553; Jewish visitors 415; language 268, 574; metals 328, 333; Monophysite Christianity 433, 446, 448; mud 559; penetration 86, 256; population movements 79; Stone Age 42, 43, 54, 60, 277, 686, 690; trade 593, 631
- 'Nile' (Lower Senegal) 675; (Niger) 677, 678
- Nilotes 83; proto-Nilotic 67
- Nilotic centre (*Pennisetum*) 310; Nilo-Ethiopian centre (crops) 310
- 'Nine Bows' (= Kush) 223, 564
- Nine Saints (Ethiopia) 443
- Nineveh 95
- Ninguria island 299
- Nioro 673
- Nitria, monks 428, 435
- Niuty (nephew of George I of Nubia) 578, 581-2
- Njoro river cave 73, 350
- Nkhal stage 305
- Nkope Bay 380
- Nobà 260, 261, 267, 268
- Nobatae 208, 209, 270, 271, 550, 563
- Nobatia (Maris) 271, 447, 448, 563, 565, 567, 568, 582
- Nok 330; Nok Culture 2, 81, 313, 322, 330, 338, 361
- Nomades *see* Numidians (= Numidae)
- nomadic pastoralism 76, 79, 86, 275; peoples, societies 308; pressure 666, 667, 673
- nomads: Berber, Libyan-Berber 337, 488, 676; Egypt, eastern Sahara 502, 620, 621, North-West Africa 199, 204, 484, 485, 486, 488, 489, 550; Gautier's interpretation 510-11, 513, 628; Nubia 237, 246; Sahara/Sahel 275, 276, 307, 318, 337, 659, 667, 682; Šanhāja 652, 666, 670; Zaghāwa 680, 681, 683
- nomarchs 151
- nomes (districts) 421, 423; nome-chiefs 89, 90, 91, 104
- Norris, H. T. 638n., 656 and n., 661 and n., 665 and n., 717
- North-East Africa 16, 59, 76, 363; *see also individual places*
- Northern Africa 1, 3, 4, 9, 89, 148; hominids 33, 39, 59; Stone age 30, 37, 38, 54, 84, 686; agriculture, domestication 73, 76, 77, 317, 344; classical 87-147, 148-209, 691-3, 693-7; Christian 410-87, 704-8; Muslim 490-55, 587-636, 708-13, 715; *see also individual places*
- North-West Africa 2, 8, 35, 54, 60, 70, 75, 686; Carthage 124, 126-33, 167-76, 691; cavalry, camels 143, 144, 145; kingdoms 147, 176-91; metals 318, 319-20; Saharan trade 339, 619, 641, 650
 Roman 199, 201-5, 206-7, 208-9, 697; Christian period 411, 451-89, 706-8; *see also Maghrib*
- North-West India 16
- north-western Central Africa 402-6
- Noshy, 695
- notched tools 61
- Notitia Dignitatum* 288
- Notitia Provinciarum et Civitatum Africae* 481-2 and n.
- Novios* 300
- Noun (Bambotus) 299
- Nsenga 384
- Nswatugi 53
- Ntereso 306, 331, 347
- Nuanetsi r. 387
- Nuba (Kordofan) 338; Hills 268
- Nūba 680
- Nubae 246
- Nubia: civilization 86, 156, 210-71, 556, 569-77; cultivation 71; gold 96, 323, 324, 578; iron 326-7, 334; support for rebels 157, 158, 629; trade with Egypt 155-6; *see also Meroe*; Kush; Stone Age 37, 54, 55, 58 n.
- Arab attacks 564; Banū Kanz 585-6; *baqt* 505, 536, 566-7, 713; tribute 506, 507, 511
 Christian 328, 536, 556-88, 712; frontier

INDEX

- 428, 443; kingdoms 430, 447, 563;
king's son 536, 577, 578; missions 411,
447, 448, 559–60, 561–3
lower 258, 349, 556, 699; Persians 99;
Egyptian occupation 158; control 193;
Roman withdrawal 208, 269; Nubian
temple-building 228, 241; Meroitic
invasion, occupation 228, 241, 257, 258;
temple of Isis 246; Ballana culture
269–70
Nubia, lake 713
Nubians 268, 271, 591, 613, 620; *see also*
under languages
'nuclear Mande' 312
nudity 338
nug (food plant) 81
Nukkāri Ibadites 610
Nukūr 525, 553, 606
Nūl (S. Morocco) 648
numerical taxonomy, linguistic 356
Numidia 172–3, 175, 177, 181–4, 188, 189,
199, 488, 695; Roman 199–200, 201,
203, 206, 466, 470; Christian cities 463,
470; countryside 462, 471, 477, 487,
706; eastern 480; high plateau 463, 469,
472; interior 125, 128; southern 459,
462, 467, 468, 476, 487; western 458,
484; 'upper' 471
Numidians 123, 176; Carthaginian allies
123, 125, 131, 172; Carthaginian
influence 133, 176; cavalry 125, 167,
173; infantry 125; kings 128 and n.,
146 and n., 147, 176–7, 178; rebels
170, 200; Roman allies 172, 175; tribes
129, 131, 143, 147, 200, 484; wars with
Carthage 121, 169, 171
Numidian Church, Christians 462 and n.,
466, 469, 475, 488; Church Council
466; Primate, bishops, episcopal sees
461, 462 and n., 467, 472;
Numidia Cirtensis 208; Militiana 208
Nupe 334
Nuri: Royal burials 211, 217, 218, 221, 223,
224, 226, 229, 231, 238; pyramids 213,
222, 224, 225, 231; funerary chapel
233; iron 326
nuts 67
al-Nuwayri 599n., 661 and n.
Nyandarua (Aberdare) range 369
Nyanza Province, Kenya 364, 367, 377
Nyirankuba 367
Nzakara 405, 406

Oak, Synod of 435
Oakhurst cave 64; complex 63
oarsmen 125, 293
oases, Saharan 42, 76, 78, 143, 313, 593, 641
obelisk 249
O'Brien, T. P. 687
obsidian 38, 43, 59, 276
occupation, permanent 64
Oceania 318
oceanic influence (climate) 648
ochre 60, 350
Octavian, Caesar Octavian (= Augustus)
163, 190, 191
Odner, K. 690
Oea (= Tripoli) 127
Oezalces 180
oikoumene 6
oil lamps 649
oil palm 71, 81, 313, 314, 347, 358; nut shells
306
okra (*Hibiscus esculentus*) 312
Old Cairo 430n.
Old Dongola 563, 565, 568, 569, 580, 584,
585, 586, 587; *see also* Dongola
Oldowan 26, 28, 29, 30, 32, 33: 'developed
Oldowan' 32, 687
Olduvai: foodstuffs 27, 29, 33–4; human
skeletal material 23, 35; manuports 28;
stone industry 26, 30, 32, 689
olive oil 94, 124, 127, 203, 411, 596, 616;
olive plantations, cultivation 129, 290,
458, 464, 489, 616; pressing 616;
storage 471
Oliver, Roland 4, 10, 703; and Fagan, B. M.
703
Olorgosailie 34
Ombrion island 299
Omo valley, basin 15, 23, 35, 41, 69, 686
onions 314
Ophellas 114, 115, 165
Opitz, H. G. 705
Optatus of Milveis 462n., 470n., 471n.,
472 and n., 707
Optatus, bishop of Thamugadi 476
oral tradition 3; Bantu Africa 392, 406,
408, 692; Khoi 375; Mauritania 665;
Sahara, Sudan 637, 673–4, 676, 680,
683n., 717
Oran 146, 606
Orange r. 47, 52, 375, 376
Orange Free State 396
Orangia industry 52
Orania 280
orchards 313
ordo (Circumcellion) 471
oribi antelopes 385
Oriens, diocese 208
Origen 417, 418, 419, 420, 421, 704;
Origenists 431
Orthodox (Melkite) Church *see* Melkite
Church

INDEX

- oryx 275
Oryza barthii, *O. breviculata*, *O. sativa* (rice) 312; *O. glaberrima* (dry rice) 312, 343
 Osiris, god 146, 216
ostraca 268
 ostrich, ostrich feathers 220; eggshells 60; beads 60
 Ostrogorsky, G. 499n.
 Otacilia Severa, empress 419
 Ottomans 587
 Ouargla 308n.
 Oued Chelif 484
 Oued Nfiss, Wadi Niffis 554, 555
 Oued R'zel 471
 Oued Tensift 555
 Owen Muhaggiaj 336
 Oukaimeden 319
 Oulton, J. E. L. (trans.) 420n., 426n.
 Oum er-Rbia 555; (Anatis) 299
outils esquillés 65
 over-grazing 274
 Ovimbundu people 401
Ovis, sheep 318; *O. egyptica* *O. longipes*, *O. platycera* 317
 Oweis el-Quruny 233
 oxen: for *saqia* 219, 257; requisition 428; pack oxen 276, 318; riding oxen 318; *see also* cattle
 Oxnard, C. E. 24n.
 ox-powered irrigation wheel (*saqia*) 195, 219, 257
Oxyrhynchus 415, and n., 423 and n., 425, 433, 440, 442; papyri 421n., 423n., 704
 oysters (freshwater) 57
 Ozemdir Bey 587

 Pachomius (Pachom) 423 and n., 428, 429, 431, 439; Pachomian monks 429, 433, 439, 442, 448
 Pachoras (= Faras) 430n., 447
 pack animals 276, 318, 635
pactum (latin), *paktōn* (Greek) 505
 pagans: Egypt 419, 438; North-West Africa 452, 454, 457, 462–3; Nubia 447 560
 pagarchy, pagarchs (local administration) 499, 500, 501, 514, 546
pagi, administrative districts 130
 painted stones, Kumbi Saleh 674
 paintings *see* rock art
 paintings, temple 250, 287, 316; *see also* under Faras
 pair-bonding 84
 Paiyampalli (South India) 349n.
 Pachom *see* Pachomius
 palace city, palace fortress: Egypt 593, 597, 622; North-West Africa 529, 597, 604, 631; Syria, Iraq 526–7; palace government 527, 612
 palaces: Egypt 623; Nubia 217, 218, 559, 560, 575, 581, 585; Sudan 668, 681
 palaeo-anthropology 11, 12, 82, 685, 690
 palaeo-geography 14
 Palaeolithic 686; Lower 20, 51; Middle (= Middle Stone Age) 20, 35–54, 59, 61, 68, 687, 688; Upper 37, 42, 47, 48, 54, 55, 56, 58n., 60
 palaeo-magnetic chronology 12, 18, 27, 685
 'palaeo nigritic' peoples 332, 338
 palaeontologists, French 685
 Palaiphatos 138–9 and n.
 Palermo *see* Panormus
 Palestine 42, 149, 433, 521, 592, 601, 622, 629; frontier with Egypt 446; monk 447
 Palladius 433 and n., 439n.
 palm leaves, clothes of 297; palm wine 315
 Palmer, H. R. 680n., 683n., 717
 palms, date *see* dates; *see also* oil palm
 Palmyra 206, 220, 269
 palynology 14; *see also* pollen
Panicum 60; *P. lactum*, *P. turgidum* 305
 Panopolis 433, 439
 Panormus (= Palermo) 117, 168
 Pantaenus 416
 Pantaleo 487
 Paos, *epistrategos* 160
 papacy, pope 432, 437, 438, 444, 457, 478, 482, 487
 paper 617
 Papnute 582
 papyrus 94; papyrus rolls 152, 154
 papyri: biblical, Church 414, 415 and n., 423 and n., 429, 704–5; social and political 419n., 421n., 422n., 425, 433, 493, 501, 597, 598; sources 691, 694, 695, 696, 704, 709
 Paraetionium 208
 Paraniotes 369; *see also* under languages
 parasol (royal) *see* umbrella, state
 parchment 617
 Pare Hills 344, 362, 371
 Parke, H. W. 693
 Parkington, J. E. and Poggenpoel, C. 690
 Parmenian, bishop 473, 475
 Parry, V. J. and Yapp, M. E. 627n., 715
 Parsons, P. J. 696
parthenaion, convent 424
Paspalum, crop-weed 79
 passports 513
 pastoralism, pastoralists 344, 389, 395, 396; Bantu Africa 350, 352, 353, 360, 368, 400, 690; Khoi 396, 397; North-West

INDEX

- Africa 76, 143, 144, 189, 605, 615, 633;
Sahara 79, 80, 86, 275, 292, 342; Senegal 676
- pasture 221, 273, 275, 280, 648, 666
- pathology 58
- patriarch of Egypt 505, 535, 557, 569, 572, 580, 705
- patriarchal succession 669
- Patritius, father of Augustine 473
- patronage 434, 441–2, 524, 613; patrons, stock-owning 396
- Paul, *hegemon* (Abbot), patriarch 446, 447
- Paul (Imperial official) 472
- Paul of Samosata, bishop, 421, 468
- Paul the Bishop, Paulus (Cirta) 465, 466, 467
- Paul, Paulos, Bishop of Faras 568, 576
- pavilions, fortified 621; royal 669
- pax Romana* 422, 455
- Payne-Smith, R. (trans.) 561n., 713
- peasants: Coptic, Egyptian 85, 411, 423, 429, 439, 442, 449, 546, 547
- fugitive 513, 514, 547–8, 589
- Pelagius, heretic 477
- Pelagius, Roman legate 446
- Peleponese 111
- Pelorois* (bovid) 34
- pendants 58; bronze 320
- penetration lines (Sahara) 321
- penguins 53
- Pennisetum*, bulrush millet 71, 302, 303n., 305, 306 and n., 308, 309, 343, 349n.; *Pennisetum* millets 311, 312, 314; wild 78
- Pentapolis, 'five cities' (= Cyrenaica) 108
- People of the Sea 279, 319
- pepper 164, 313
- perfume 124, 138, 617
- Peri Archon*, 'on first principles' 418
- Periplus of the Erythraean Sea* 196, 245, 263, 264, 295, 373n., 696
- Periplus of Hanno* 297–8, 299; *see also* Hanno, explorer
- Perpetua, Vibia 417, 455
- persecution: Egypt, Decian 417, 419–20 and n., 422, 704; Great Persecution 421, 424, 425–6, 574; by Justin, of Monophysites 444; Muslim, of Copts 569, 570, 580; in North-West Africa 452–3, Decian 459; Severan 417, 455 and n., Valerian 461; by Augustine of Donatists 476–7; Muslim, of Sunni 605; Himyarite kingdom of Christians 443
- Perseus legend 138–9
- Persia, Persians 112, 145, 318, 430, 457, 545, 560
- Persian Empire 121, 504, 527, 691, 693; army, fleet 100, 102, 178, 532, 533; invasions 98–9, 223, 225, 428, 449, 560; exploration 100, 296; Persian rule (Egypt) 99–103, 105, 149, 151, 691, 692
- origins, influence 7, 520, 527, 570; royal house, capital 99, 548, 576; civil war 101, 103, 104; invasion by Alexander 105
- Persian Gulf 352, 596
- Persian lambskins 517
- pestles 350
- Peteesis, governor 106
- Peter, St 457
- Peter, Bishop of Alexandria 425, 426
- Peter, *exarch* 488
- Peter, governor 504
- Peter Mongus 441, 443
- Petit-Maire, N. 701
- Petrie, J. 711
- Petronius, Publius, governor 245, 247
- Petros, bishop 580
- Phalaborwa 395
- Pharaoh 89 and n., 90, 99, 100, 150, 195; installation 99, 157
- 'Pharaoh' 431, 438
- Pharaonic period, 557, 564
- Pharusii 139, 143, 145, 178, 284
- Phasis 496
- Pheretima 112
- Philadelphos *see* Ptolemy II Philadelphos
- Philae 128, 245, 250, 257, 258, 446, 447, 567; temple 560
- philhellen*, 'friend of Greeks' ('Ahmose) 98
- Philip, St 244
- Philip III Arrhidaios 148; Philip V of Macedon 158
- Philip, 'the Arabian', emperor 206, 419
- Phillipson, D. W. 61n., 379n., 380n., 381n., 383n., 384 and n., 688, 702, 703; and Phillipson, L. 688
- Phillipson, L. 688
- Philo 411, 414, 415
- Philometor *see* Ptolemy VI Philometor
- Philopater *see* Ptolemy IV Philopater
- philosophy: Greek 6, 8, 152, 184, 416, 417; Islamic 538, 607; Jewish 415; Latin 474; *see also under* Plato; Neo-platonists
- 'Phla' island (? = Djerba) 109
- Phocas, emperor 449, 488
- 'Phoenician Trenches' 129, 173
- Phoenicians 86, 87n., 95, 98, 107, 109, 132, 145, 148, 149; colonization, North-West Africa 5–6, 116–19, 276, 279, 292, 293, 691; exploration 116, 296, 297, 322, 693; influence, culture 8, 178, 213; mercenaries 92; metals 2, 319, 333; monopoly, trade 120; sources 116, 297, 691

INDEX

- Phoinikes, Phoenices* 87
 Phokaia 120, 121
 Phopo 379, 380
 Phrygia 456
phylai, tribes 421
physis, 'nature' 433
 phyto-geographic regions 15
 Piankhy (or Piγ?), king 210, 211, 217, 218, 233, 254
 Piankh-yerike-qa, king? 226
 picks, heavy-duty 49
 'Pietersburg Complex' 40, 47, 52, 689
 pig 4, 53, 73, 144, 315 and n., 583
 pigment 52, 307
 Pilbeam, D. 24n., 690
 pilgrimage (hajj) 551, 620, 665, 676
 pilgrimage: to shrine of St Menas 442;
 temple of Isis 246
 Pindar 112, 115
Piper guineense, Guinea pepper 313
 piracy 155, 167, 373, 620, 632, 634
 Pirenne, H. 490
 Pisakar, king 230
 Pisentios, bishop 448, 449
 pits, storage 386
 place-names 450
 plague 131, 421, 460
 plant distribution 71; domestication 10,
 71 and n., 80–1 and n., 349, 390; plant
 foods 29, 32, 60, 67, 81, 82, 86; wild
 60, 67, 81, 82, 86; remains 303;
 resources 67
 plantain (*Musa sapientum*, var. *paradisica*) 314
 planting: and fishing 407; deliberate 82
 plaque, stone 251
 Platea island (? = Borna) 107, 110
 'Platform of the Gods', 'Chariot of the
 Gods' 135
 Plato 416; Platonic Academy 165; Platonic
 thought 414, 427; view of God 418,
 419; Platonizing philosophers 416;
 Middle Platonic philosophy 416, 418;
 see also Neo-Platonists
 Pleistocene 13; Lower 15–16, 24, 30 and
 n., 32, 84, 687; Middle 14, 15–16, 23, 30
 and n., 32, 34, 35, 84, 686; Middle/Upper
 35, 84; Upper 32; later 35, 69, 70, 84;
 end, close 59, 60, 61, 69, 83, 85;
 Pleistocene/Early Holocene 64, 78
 Pliny: Atlantic coast 143n., 292, 298, 299;
 Indian Ocean 293; North-West Africa
 139n., 694, 696; Nubia 244, 246, 248,
 256; Sahara 284, 286 and n.
 Pliocene 24; Plio-Pleistocene 13, 14, 26, 29,
 30n., 84, 686
 Ploey, J. de 687
 ploughing 442
 Plumley, J. M. 430n., 528n., 712
 Plutarch 178n.
 'pluvial-interpluvial' chronology 13
Pnubs (= Argo) 222
 poets 152, 462, 483, 484
 pogrom 412, 419
 points (stone) 37, 42, 43; lanceolate 49;
 unifacial 51
 pole and mud structures 386, 387
 police 151, 604
 Polish excavation expedition 558, 559; see
 also Faras
politeuma 'government' 152, 412
 political development, Nubia 569; frontier
 557; organization, Sudan 666, 667
 pollen 13, 49, 71, 349, 350
 poll tax (Roman) 195, 197
 Polyarchos 111
 Polybius 130–1 and n., 139, 157n., 182 and
 n., 292, 298, 299, 693, 694, 695
 polygamy, Libyan 146
 polyhedrals, stone (tools) 26, 28
 Polykrates 98
 Pomaria (= Tlemcem) 286, 484
 pomegranates 129
 Pomongwan 64
 Pompey, Pompeians 162, 186, 187, 189, 190
 ponies 278, 279
 population, Stone Age; effect of vegetation
 and climatic change, 14, 38, 43, 60, 78,
 79, 80, 83, 327, 336–7; growth 9, 38, 43,
 61, 66, 76, 78, 82; movement 31, 51–2,
 277, 337; size 29, 38, 52, 64, 67
 Bantu Africa: increase 342, 357, 366, 407;
 movement 384, 389, 392, 404, 406;
 pressure 360; size 343, 353, 376, 407
 Egypt 536, 548, 549
 North-West Africa, Sahara, Sudan 309,
 458, 663, 674; pressure 79, 109
 Nubia 219, 257–8, 570
 Porc Epic cave 34, 51
 ports 373, 486, 550, 573, 618; desert 687
 Portêtres, R. 79n., 309 and n., 311 and n.,
 312 and n., 700
 Portugal, Portuguese 315 and n., 318
 Posener, G. (ed.) 278n., 325n., 691
 Posidonius 299
 Posnansky, M. 369 and n., 702, 703; and
 Nelson, C. M. 687
 Possidius of Calama 479 and n., 480 and n.
 post-Pleistocene 686
 Potasimto 217
 potassium-argon dating (K/Ar) 12, 43
 pottery 302, 304, 307, 308 and n.; kiln 319;
 glaze 319; grain impressions 71, 304,
 306, 308, 311; potters 303; wheel 234,
 236, 266

INDEX

- Aksum 262, 263
 Nubia, Meroitic 211, 234, 236, 243, 265, 266, 326; earliest Christian 556, 559; classic Christian 570, 572, 714; Ballana (x group) 269, 559; Egyptian 234, 236, 567, 569, 570; *qadus* (water-wheel pot) 258
 Stone Age 66, 70, 77, 78, 82, 308, 327, 346–7, 350, 375
 Early Iron Age: 362, 363, 364, 366, 371, 383, 703; 'Channelled ware' 363, 383; channel decorated 327, 383, 393; 'Dimple-based' 363, 364, 366, 367, 369, 370, 371, 397; false relief chevron 372, 379, 380; glazed and painted 327; grooved decoration 362, 366
 Early Iron Age: Kwaie 369, 379, 372n., 378, 380, 393; Lelesu 371; Urewe 364, 366, 369, 372n., 378, 380
 Early Iron Age: East Africa 362, 371, 372, 378, 379; Rhodesia 363, 386; Gokomere 380, 382, 383, 386–7, 388, 389, 390, 393, 394, 396; Ziwa 380, 383, 388; Rwanda/E. Zaire 362, Funa r. 262, Katuruka/Rutare 362, 364, 365, Type A 366, 367; Southern Africa 393, Bambandyanalo 394, 'channelled' 393, Sotho 395, Uitkomst 395; S. Zaire, Ile des Mimosas 397, Katanga 398; 'Kisalian' 398; Sudan West Africa, Darfur 366, Ennedi 327, 366, Haddadian 327, 328, 330, 335, Igbo Ukwu 338, Taruga 330, Tichit 304; Zambia/Malawi 378, 379, 382, 383, 388, Chondwe 380, 381, 383, Damba 382, 383, 384, 387, Kalambo 379, 381, 383, Kalundu 382, 383, Kapwirimbwe 380, 381, Kolomo 381, 384, Luangwa 384, Machili 383, Nkope 380, 393, Shongwe 382
 later Iron Age, East Africa/Uganda; Bigo Ware 368, 369; Engaruka 372, Lolui 369; rouletted and cord 368, 369; type B 368; 369; Rhodesia, Leopard's Kopje 388–9, 390, 392, 394, Zimbabwe II, III 390
 modern 380, Luo 369, Soli 381, Sotho 395, type C 368, Uele 366, Zambia/Malawi 384
 pottery imports, Mediterranean, Greek 138, 257, 292, 298, 674
 pottery figurines 329, 330, 331; model camel 287
 poultry 386
 pounding tools 307
 Praedestinatus 471n.
praefectus 192, 194, 208; *Augustalis* 443, 447;
Praetorio 487
Praeses 207, 208
 prayer, Muslim 660
 prayers, Orthodox 580
 pre-Aksumite settlers (Ethiopia) 81, 86
 pre-Aurignacian 36
 Préaux, C. 500n., 549n., 695
 precious stones 127, 178, 204, 301
 Prectis 288
 pre-domestication phase 77
 pre-dynastic artefacts (Egypt) 85–6
 prefect of Egypt 423 and n., 424, 426, 440;
Augustal 443, 447
 pre-human ancestry 16–19
 pre-Iron Age peoples 343
 pre-Islamic period, civilization 321, 340
 Premnis (= Qasr Ibrim) 247, 250
 presbyters 416, 417, 464; *presbyter unitatis* 485
 'pre-Wilton' 63
 priest, Ethiopian 587
 priest-kings (Ife) 338
 priesthood, priests, priestesses: Egypt 99, 101, 150, 151, 152–3, 157, 194, 195;
 Nubia 216, 229, 237, 243
 Monophysite 444, 553
 Primian, bishop 476
 prisoners: in Meroitic art 259
 prince George and 'Ali Bābā 578
 of war 158
 prisons (Panopolis) 433
proconsul 191, 199, 205, 207, 452, 461
 Proconsular Africa (*Africa Proconsularis*) (= Tunisia) 453, 457, 458, 475, 477, 480, 481, 485
 Procopius 270, 289
procurator 192, 199, 482
 projectile points, weapons 58, 59
 propaganda, Fatimid 614, 647, 657; Shi'ite 526
 prophets, Jewish 416
proprietor 191
 proprietors, Egyptian rural 434, 550,
 Prorok, Khun de 301
 Prosopitis island 102
prosopon, 'person' 433
 prospectors, Carthaginian 321
 Proterius, patriarch 439, 440, 448
proteuontes, property-owners 501, 547
prothesis (part of church) 510
 proto-agricultural stage 302
protodomesticos (official) 582
 proto-Mediterranean race 59, 69–70
protomeizoteros (official) 582
 Provinces, Roman 191–2, 207–8
 Prudhoe lions 227, 240
 'Psammetichos' *see* Psamtek (Psammetichos)
 'Psammetichos', father of 'Inaros' 101

INDEX

- Psammetichos, king of Libya 102
 'Psammetichos, descendant of Psammetichos' (Amyrtaios II) 104
 Psamtek (Psammetichos), pharaoh 90, 91, 92, 94, 95
 Psamtek II 95–6, 214, 216, 222, 326
 Psamtek III 98
 Pselchis (Dakka) 246, 247
 pseudo-Attian *see* *Periplus of the Erythraean Sea*
 Pseudo-Caesar 187
 pseudo-Skylax 137, 138 and n., 139, 145, 298–9, 693
 Pshenmut 104
 Psinaula 288
 'Psychics', redeemable 416
 psychology of dreams 415; of evil 474
 Psylloi 142
 Ptolemaios *see* under Ptolemy
 Ptolmais, Cyrenaica, port of Barce (= Tolmeta) 108, 166, 198, 208
 Ptolemais, Egypt 152, 194
 Ptolemais epi Theras, Ptolemais Theron, 'at the hunting ground' 155, 245, 263
 Ptolemy, house of 106, 107, 125, 148, 149, 165, 193; Ptolemaic period 228, 257, 288
 Ptolemy I 106, 114, 149, 150, 152, 153, 154, 155, 165–6, 288
 Ptolemy II Philadelphos 149, 150, 154–5, 156, 158, 165, 227, 228, 245
 Ptolemy III Euergetes, 'benefactor' 149, 156, 165, 263, 264
 Ptolemy IV Philopater, 'father-loving' 150, 156, 158, 159, 228
 Ptolemy V Epiphanes 157, 158, 159
 Ptolemy VI Philometer 159, 160, 164, 166, 228
 Ptolemy VII Euergetes II, 'Physcon' (pot-belly) 159, 160, 161, 164, 166
 Ptolemy VIII Soter II, 'Lathyros' (chick-pea) 161
 Ptolemy IX Alexander 161
 Ptolemy X Alexander II 161
 Ptolemy XI Philopater II, 'Auletes' (flute-player) 161, 162
 Ptolemy XII, co-ruler with Cleopatra 162
 Ptolemy XIII 162
 Ptolemy XIV Caesaron, son of Cleopatra 163
 Ptolemy of Mauretania 190
 Ptolemy Apion 161, 166
 Ptolemy Sympetesis (general) 166
 Ptolemy, Claudius, *Geography* 6, 290, 292, 295, 299, 300, 301, 374
 public office 422; works 290
 Pulcheria, empress 438
 pumpkin, fluted (*Telfairia occidentalis*) 81, 313
 Punic *see* under Carthage
 Punpun 347
 'pupil smiters' 564, 573
 'purples': dye mollusc 69; fisheries 87, 127; factory 190; trade 127
 Putaya Province (Cyrenaica etc.) 100
 Pygmalion, king of Tyre 118
 pygmoid population 66; pygmy peoples, culture 403–4, 405
 pylons 253
 pyramids
 Egypt 103, 233
 Kushite 213–15, 231–2, 239–41, 248, 249, 251; Lower Nubia 233 257
pyrgoi, 'towers', fortified farmhouses 111
 Pyrrhos, king 123, 125, 167
 Pyrrhus, Monothelite leader 488
 Pythian Odes 112, 117
 Qadan 57
qādī (pl. *quḍāt*) judge 516, 531, 532, 534, 538, 542, 543, 544, 594; North-West Africa 531, 538, 539, 543, 594; *qādī* 'l-*quḍāt*, chief *qādī* 532, 541
 Qādī of Egypt 596; of Masmūda 664; of Šabra 634
 al-Qādī 'Iyād 660n., 718
 al-Qādī 'l-Nu'mān (al-Qādī Abū Ḥanīfa al-Nu'man) 600n., 607, 614, 620
 al-Qadī, W. (ed.) 600n.
qadus, water-pot of *saḡia* 258
 al-Qāhira, 'the victorious', Cairo 622, 623
Qa'im, 'bringer of the Resurrection' 599; rival *Qa'im* 609
 al-Qā'im, caliph 606, 607, 609, 610, 611, 614
 Qal'a, 'castle' 627, 629
 Qalā'ūn, sultan 585
 Qalidurut, king 565
 Qammūda 535
 Qanqāra 653, 655
 Qarmaṭiyya (Carmathians) 600
 Qart Hadasht, 'New City' (= Carthage) 118
 al-Qaṣr 'the castle' 567
 Qaṣr al-Hayr 526
 Qaṣr Ibrim (= Premnis): episcopal see, bishop 430n., 558, 583, 587; fortress 250, 579, 582, 583, 613; inscriptions, documents 249, 250, 257, 270, 274, 558, 712
 Qastiliyya 642, 643, 659
 al-Qaṭai', 'the quarters, wards' 593, 601, 622
qayrawān, 'caravan, halt' 507
Qayrawān *see* Kairouan
 Qaysites (N. Arabians) 515
gere (ruler's title) 248, 251
 Qibṭ (Copts), native Egyptians 503, 507,

INDEX

- 510, 512, 514, 547, 548, 549; *see also* Copts
- Qinnaşrîn 601
- qirād*, contract trade 616
- qiyās*, analogy 537
- Q'mran sectaries 414, 415
- Qostol burial mound 270, 271
- quagga 39, 60, 278
- quartz 38, 65, 302, 380, 688; flakes 380
- quartzite 38
- quaternary chronology, studies 685
- Quatremère, E. M. 558 and n., 712
- queen, queen-mother 212, 216, 222, 248, 253, 255, 581, 612
- Quezel, P. 308n.
- Quinquegentiani, 'People of the Five Tribes' 206
- Qulzum 548
- Quodvultdeus, bishop 479
- Quosenus († of Couz) 299
- Qur'an *see* Koran
- Quraysh Arabs 588
- Qurta, episcopal see 583
- Qus 530
- Quşayr 'Amra 526
- quwwād*, governors 601
- Rabaḍ revolt 645
- Rabat 35
- rabbis, Carthaginian 451
- Rabie, H. 715
- Rabirius 162
- 'races' 67–70, 690; race relations 695; racial classification 141; terminology 496, 510
- Rachgoun 53
- radiocarbon dates: Bantu Africa 362n., Bigo 369, Chondwe 380, Dambwa 382, Engaruka 372, Funa 363, Golomere 387, Kwale 371, Leopard's Kopje 389, Machili 377, 383, Nakapapula 379, Rwanda 367; South Africa 393, 395; Transvaal 595; Urewe 367; Uvinza 408; Zaïre 397, 398; Zimbabwe 390
- Sudan, West Africa, Sahara: Nubia, Amekni 306; Awdaghust 340; Daima 329; Gambia stone circle 312n.; Ghana 340, 674; Igbo Ukwu 338; Jabbaren 316; Kougha 321n.; Meroe 326; Ntereso 331; Sao 328–9; Sefar 316; Taruga, Nok 330; Tichit 304, 305; Tilemsi 309; W. Mauritania 320; Yelwa 321
- radiocarbon dating (C14) 14, 37, 361, 362n., 392, 686, 702, 703
- radiometric chronology 13 and n., 18, 27, 44, 685
- raḥā'in*, hostages 511
- raids: by Arabs 505–6, 586, 637; by Byzantines 503; by Carmathians 620; from Aures and Kabyle mts 458, 479, 483, 485–6, 488; from desert 277, 291, 339, 433, 620; from Djerid 632; from North-West Africa 516, 555, 637–8; from Red Sea Hills 556, 578; from Sus 648
- on Egypt 206, 433, 503, 620; France 516; North-West Africa 458, 479, 483, 485–6, 488, 505–6, 632; Nubia 556, 578, 586; Roman frontier provinces 205; Sicily 516; Sudan 291, 516, 555, 637, 638, 645; Tichit 339
- rainfall 14, 15, 16, 63, 276, 303; decline 274, 308, 309; quantity (Sahel/savanna) 275, 277, 308, 309, 343, 344, 666; traditions 672, 673
- Cyrenaica 107, 109; Egypt 422; North-West Africa 464; Nubia 219
- raisins 649
- Rakotis 448
- Ramapithecus* 16, 19
- ram-headed gods, rams-horn dance 115, 116, 132, 145–6, 150
- Ramses II, temple 573; Ramses III 325
- Randall MacIver, D. and Woolley, C. L. 235n., 255n., 698
- Raphael, king 580
- Raphia, battle 156, 157, 163
- al-Raḡiq 599, 715
- Raḡqa 596
- Raḡqāda, palace-city 597, 602, 611, 649
- Ra's al-Mā' 671
- Rāshidūn, the four 'orthodox' caliphs 530, 531
- Raven, S. 697
- rawāfiḍ*, Shi'ite heretics 589, 658
- razzias 458
- Rea, J. R. 421n.
- records, written 391
- recruitment: Egypt 502, 503, 507, 585; North-West Africa 511, 512
- Red Sea 6, 9, 352, 558; canal 95, 100; coast 86; connection across 17, 70, 288, 536, 593; routes 245, 443, 499, 548; trade 163, 195, 220, 263–4, 596; voyages 95, 100, 155, 296
- Red Sea Hills 220, 268, 572, 573, 578
- reeds 307
- reforms, Carthage 174; Diocletian 207–9; Severus 197, 207
- refugees 550; refuge area 584–5
- Rega people 404
- regalia, pharaonic 151, 194; Nubian 228, 575, 581; *eparch* of Nubia 582
- insignia, North-West Africa 607; 621, 669

INDEX

- regiments, tribal 502, 517
 Regulus, general 168
 Re-Harakhte, god 216
Rehreh people 222, 223
 reign-length 214
 reincarnation (Fatimid) 602
 Reisner, G. A. 218, 221, 223n., 226, 231, 238 and n., 242, 269, 698
 relics, reliquaries 487, 488
 reliefs (temple etc.) 221, 227, 228, 233, 242–3
 religion: Christianity 410–51, 451–89, 556–7, 559–64, 695, 696; Islam 341, 516, 521, 526, 668, 672; pagan 85, 338; Egypt 145, 153, 195; Ghana, Malel, Songhay 668, 669, 672, 679; Libya 115, 145–6; North-West Africa 132, 485, 697; *see also* theology and under individual gods and peoples
 religious distinctions 511, 669; frontiers 557, 650; paintings 595
 renegades 497
 repentance 660
 reptiles 372, 376
 republics: Carthage 119, 122; Rome 191
 reservoirs 239, 590, 594
 resettlement 547
Revelation, Book of 455
 revenue: caliphate 596, 698; Carthage 169; Egypt 151, 500, 514, 515, 533, 589, 590; Ifriqiya 628, 631; Muslim states 610; Rome, from Egypt 195; Sijilmasa 647
 revolts and rebellions: Egypt, against Persians 99, 101, 102, 103, 104, 147; against Djebo 105, against Ptolemies 157, 158, 159, 160, 161, 162, 228; against Rome 193, 196, 198, 206; Muslim 521, 591, 597; of Delta peasants 515, 527–8, 534, 535, 547, 591; of Berbers 604
 Cyrenaica 111, 165, 196, 198
 Libya 179
 North-West Africa: Carthage 119, 122, 131, 166, 170, 179; Numidia 180, 182, 200; Mauretania 190, 191, 200; Roman (Gordians) 205, 206, 457, 458; Kabyles 460; Circumcellions 472; Gildo 476; Maghrib 516; 'Barbar' 517–18, 641; Kharijite, Shi'ite 518–20, 521, 528, 644; *jund* 534; Tunis 597
 Islam 542, 609; Islamic revolution 598, 599; *see also dawla; da'wa*
 Arabia 528; Iraq (Zanj) 592, 597, 599; Palestine, Syria, Iraq 521 revolutionaries, Greek 165
rex, 'king' 176
 Reygasse, P. 301, 334n.
- Rhapta 373, 374
 Rhine r. 457
 rhinoceros, rhinoceros horn 164, 272, 286, 290, 300
 Rhinoclura 446
 Rhodesia: Stone Age 48, 64, 65, 688, 690; Iron Age 362, 374, 378, 386, 388, 393, 394, 396, 397, 702; Khoi 376
 eastern 362, 388, 390; plateau 362, 382, 390, 407; western south-west 389, 394
 'Rhodesioid' type 35, 41
 Rhone r. 30n.
ribāt (pl. *ribat* or *ribatāt*), military posts 532, 544, 550, 551, 552, 554, 596, 657; religious centres 552, 553, 657
 rice (*Oryza*) 312, 314; wild 312; dry (*Oryza glaberrima*) 81, 343, 346, 404
 rice-growers 79
 Richir, Claude 308 and n.
 riding animals 277, 278
 Rif, Rif coast 201, 553, 606, 609
 Rift Valley (East Africa) 17, 59, 80, 350, 352, 685, 690; Ethiopia 59, 687; Kenya 69, 73 369, 370, 373; Tanzania 372
 Rightmire, G. P. 35n., 68n., 394n., 690
 rings, copper 320
 Rio de Oro, Gulf 293
 riots 196, 515, 620, 630, 631
Risāla 537
 ritual 52, 60, 85; crops 402; Egyptian 154
 Rivergate church, Faras 564
 river-lines 348, 397, 402, 405
 Riyāh (Banū Hilāl) 633, 635
 Rkiz 46, 308, 649
 roads upkeep 458
 Robburg industry 63
 Robbins, L. H. 687
 Robert, D. and S. 13n., 618n., 649; Robert, D. and S. and Devisse, J. 717; Robert, S. 337, 717
 Robinson, J. T. 689
 Robinson, K. R. 380 and n., 386 and n., 387n., 388n., 702; and Sandelowsky, B. 688
 rock art 66, 75, 690, 694; camels 287; cattle, sheep, goats 75, 316, 317, 318, 337; chariots horses 144, 278, 279, 321, 322, 333, 337, 340; date palms 313; fauna gods 272; 146; metal weapons 319, 320, 327, 333, 334
 rock-shelters 66, 337
 rodents 28, 58, 308
 Roderic, king 313
roi faindant 603
 Romanelli, P. 696, 697
 Romanization 194, 202, 454, 479

INDEX

- Romano-Africans 482; Ramano-Berber villages 463 and n.
 Romanus I, emperor 612
 Romanus, *comes Africae* 286
 Rome, Roman: annexation 161; Carthage 199; Crete 197; Cyrenaica 167; Egypt 175; Mauretania 190, 191, 199, 695; Numidia 187, 199, 695; Sardinia 170; Syria 162
 citizenship 421–2 and n.; civilization 5, 6, 8; kingship 177; historians 188; objects, style (Meroe) 244, 253; traders (Red Sea) 245
 control: Italy 123, 148, 167; Sardinia 170; Sicily 168, 170; Spain 171, 180
 Empire 6, 191–205, 205–9, 269, 430, 483, 693, 696; frontiers 430, 452
 fleet, exploration 139, 168, 293, 297
 Rome, and Carthage 123, 174; indemnity 170; treaties 124; wars, first 126, 130, 168–70, 179; second 130, 131, 159, 172–3, 177, 179; 181; third 175, 182, 183, 185, 189
 and Egypt: Cyrenaica 161, 166; intervention 160, 162; rulers 245, 269, 500; treaties 159
 and North-West Africa 144, 479, 484, 501, 509, 525, 694; camels 288–9, 290; *see also* Rome and Carthage; Rome and Numidia
 and Nubia 246–9, 252, 256, 257, 258, 557
 and Numidia 174, 184, 185
 Rome, Christian 410, 456, 468, 474; Popes, Bishops, episcopal see 428, 432, 433, 437, 441, 444, 456, 461, 468; Church 431, 443, 456, 457, 462, 468
 Rooidam 37
 root crops, edible roots 80–1, 307, 311, 343, 344, 346
 Rop rock shelter 66, 336, 337
 Rosenberger, B. 321n., 595n., 712
 Rosenthal, E. I. J. 542n.
 Roget, J. P. 322n.
 Rostovtzeff, M. 422, 694, 696
roffe, pound 670
 Roubet, C. and Carter, P. L. 73n.
 Rouch, J. 717
 Rouffach (= Castellum Elephantum) 466
 'Round City', Madinat al-Salām (= Baghdad) 529
 Rousillon valley 30n.
 Rousseau, M. 694
 routes: Atlantic coastal 596, 633; Coptos/Berenice 155; Ifriqiya/Egypt 630; Trans-Saharan 595, 632, 638, 641, 643, 644, 648–9, 650 695; *see also* chariot tracks
 Rovuma/Zambezi area 344
 royal lands (Egypt) 195
 'rṣṣ', administrative districts 130
 Ruanda-Burundi 687
 Rudner, J. and I. 690
 Rudolph, lake 21, 49, 77; East Rudolph 19n., 23–4, 29
 Rufiji delta 373
 Rufinus 264, 433
 Rufira r. 380
 Rukuru 380
 rulers, Nubia 556, 557, 560, 564
 Rūm (= Byzantines) 489, 507, 510; (? = Catholics) 510; Rūmī (= Greek) 518
 Rusaddir (= Melilla) 128
 Ruspe 482; bishop of 482
 Rustamids 553, 605, 628
 Rutare 364, 371
 Ruwenzori/Elgon area 349
 Rwanda 362, 364, 366 and n., 367, 368, 369, 371, 702
 Rzimarz, Fr Giocomo 587
 Sabaeen kingdom 156, 164, 260, 288, 373
 Sabellians 421
 Šābendis 497
 Sabi r./Nkosi bay area 395
 Šabra, 'fortitude' (= al-Manšūriya), palace-fortress 605, 611, 624, 626, 635 *šūq* 631
 Sabrakamani, king 226, 227
 Sabratha 127, 489
sacerdotes, pagan priests 470
 sacraments 461
 sacrifices 419, 459, 461, 465
šadaqa, religious tax (= 'ushr) 641, 660
 Sadenga 213
 al-Sa'dī 673n., 674, 679n.
 al-Šādiq, 'the authentic' 540
 Sadok, M. Hadj (ed.) 651n.
 Safanqu 671
 Safi 658
 Saguntum 171, 172
 Sahara: 'wet' 9, 15, 38, 78, 272, 336; desertification 9, 43 and n., 272–7, 339, 349, 406, 665, 700; Stone Age 9, 42, 61, 71, 73, 75, 77 and 686
 central 61, 79, 143, 322; coast 128, 134, 143, 293, 295; massifs 79; northern 190, 204, 299, 300, 313, 525; oases 8; plateau north of 41; southern 143, 310, 322, 699
 contact, routes 127, 190, 300, 301, 322, 430, 648–9, 650, 716; food, food production 303, 307, 310, 344 690; herding 316, 317, 318, 690; horses 279, 292; iron 333, 344; Islam 655, 659,

INDEX

- Sahara, contact (*cont.*)
 717; peoples 272, 333, 336, 458, 479,
 645, 653, 655, 665, 690; trade 127, 286,
 292, 301, 639, 649, 716, 717; traditions
 178, 637
- Saharan/Sudanese neolithic 71
- sahel, North-West Africa (e. coast of
 Tunisia) 534, 535, 616, 636
- sahel, south of Sahara 667; agriculture, food
 303, 309, 311, 666; climate, vegetation
 15, 38, 78, 79; cattle 317; empires,
 chiefdoms 341, 670, 671, 673; metals
 322, 332; peoples 291, 336, 338, 650,
 652, 655, 672, 673; prehistory 685;
 sources 653; towns, architecture 340,
 649
- Sahel/Sudan zone 81
- ṣāhib al-barīd*, 'master of the post office'
 527, 592
- Ṣāhib al-Ḥimār, 'man on a donkey' (= Abū
 Yazīd) 609
- ṣāhil*, 'shore' 667
- Ṣaḥnūn 539, 540, 543, 594, 660
- Sai (Nubia), episcopal see 583
- Ṣa'id, valley of Upper Egypt 500
- Ṣa'id b. Batriq (Eutychius) 495, 709
- Ṣa'id b. Ḥusayn (= 'Ubayd Allah) 600, 601,
 and n., 602
- Ṣa'id b. Khazrūn b. Fulful 626, 627, 632
- Saifawa 681, 683
- sails, square 293; sailcloth 94
- St Acheul 30
- Ste Croix, G. E. M. de 466n.
- St Macarius, monastery 495
- saints, eastern 487
- Sais 90, 96, 99, 104
- Saite dynasty (XXVI) 90–8, 103, 104, 288,
 325; descendants of 101–2, 104
- Sala (= Chella, nr Rabat) 292, 298; Sala r.
 299; *Sala* 300
- Salaga 668
- Salāh al-Dīn (= Saladin) 583
- Salama, P. 458n.
- Sale 658, 663; *ribāṭ* 658; Sale plateau 35
- Ṣāliḥ, grandfather of Yūnus 555
- Sallust 177n., 695
- salm*, *salām*, 'peace' 501, 529
- Salmama 683
- Salsa, St 478n.
- Salsus (= Sous) 299
- salt 277, 407, 408, 649, 653, 667, 669, 670;
 salt-cure 277; deposits 408, 592, 648;
 royal monopoly 154
- Saltus Burunitanus (= Soukel-Khmis) 410n.
- Samanud, battle 497
- Samarra 536, 544, 589, 590, 591, 592, 596;
 style 554
- Samos 98, 247, 250
- Sampson, G. G. 17n., 47n., 81n., 689
- San (= Bushman) 52, 66, 67, 68, 375–7, 702
- Sanam, Sanam Abu Dom 211, 213, 225, 233,
 234, 689; temple 216
- sand, encroaching 483
- Ṣandal, general 612
- sandstone, ferruginized 54
- sandstorms 650
- Sané 677
- Sanga 398, 400, 408, 409
- Sangha r. 405
- Sangoan 49, 50
- Ṣanhāja 647, 654, 664, 666, 669, 673; Anbiya
 645, 651; Awdaghust 651, 652, 653,
 666, 670; Islam, Almoravids 637, 655,
 656, 661, 662, 665, 676; nomads 628,
 648; trade system 644, 652, 663
- Sanutius, duke (= Shenute) 499
- 'Sao' (= So) 322, 328 and n., 329 and n.
- São Tomé 314
- ṣaqālība* (sing. *ṣiqḷabi*), 'Slavs' 529, 597
- saqia*, water wheel, land irrigated by *saqia*
 195, 219, 220, 257–8, 556
- Saqiyat al-Hamra' 665
- al-saqqa*, 'the water-carrier' 520
- Sarakole (= Soninke) 338
- Sarapis cult, Juipter Sarapis (Osiris-Apis)
 154, 253, 424
- Sardinia 117, 120, 124, 170, 356, 481, 482,
 516
- Sari b. al-Ḥakam 533, 534
- Sarich, V. M. 19n.
- Sarnah (?) = Sané) 677
- Sassanians (Persians) 560, 564; influence
 (Nubia) 564
- Sassoon, Hamo 372n.
- Sataspes 100, 134, 296, 297
- satrap*, governor 101, 102, 104, 105, 149,
 150; satrapy 99, 100, 105
- Saturn, Saturnus (= Baal) 203, 454, 462 and
 n., 464
- Saturninus, presbyter 465
- Saturninus, Vigellius, *proconsul* 451, 452
- Saumagne, C. 760
- Sauneron, S. and Yoyotte, J. 217n.
- savanna 14, 15, 65, 326, 403–4; dry 14, 17,
 21, 31, 342, 343, 357; highland 350;
 southern 29, 397; tropical African 12,
 17, 24, 48, 67, 76, 82; West African 29,
 65, 79
- savanna/forest ecotone 16, 17, 32, 65, 81,
 82, 273, 316
- Sāwirūs (Severus) b. Muqaffa' 494–5, 501,
 545, 546, 558, 708
- Sayce, A. H. 223n., 261 and n.
- Sayf al-Dawla 612, 620, 621

INDEX

- Sayf al-Dawla Abū 'l-Fulhū Yūsuf, 'sword of the state, man of victories' (= Buluggin) 623
 Sayf b. Dhī Yazan 682, 683
 Sbeitla (= Sufetula) 483 and n., 486, 488, 507
 Sbiba 534
 Sbikhra 459 and n.
 Scapula, proconsul 453
 scavenging (human) 13, 21, 28, 29
 Schacht, Joseph 491, 493, 503n., 531, 710
 Scherer, J. (ed.) 705
 schism 460, 461, 475, 706
 Schmidt, Peter 364n.
schoenus, 'rope', land measure 258 and n.
 Schoff, W. H. 373n.
 Schofield, J. F. 295 and n., 702
 scholars, students 544, 610
 Schoonraad, M. 66n.
 science, Greek 6, 8, 152
 Scipio 172–3, 175, 180, 181
 Scipio Aemilianus 175, 183
 scrapers 32, 37, 42, 43, 51, 58, 59, 63, 64;
 scraping equipment 65
 scripts *see* alphabet
 scriptural commentaries 417, 418, 419;
 exegesis, interpretation 414, 417, 418;
 translation 443
 Scullard, H. H. 697
 sculpture 60, 94, 242
 sea birds 64; sea shells 398, 408
 sea-level changes 16, 35, 37, 64
 'Sea of Darkness' (= Atlantic) 637
 'Sea of Sand' (= Sahara) 637, 667
 seals 53, 64
 seasonal activities 55, 66, 67, 84; movement
 64, 67, 77, 78; resources 77, 85;
 seasonality 13, 690
 Sebennytyos, church of (Nekhnebef) 104
 Sebousus, Statius 299
 Sebou, Wadi Sebou 299, 300, 516n.
 Second Sophistic school 454
 'Secret Gospel of Mark' 416
 secret society 599, 600; secret doctrine
 (Isma'ili) 605
 secretariat 547
 Secundus of Tigisis, primate 467
 Seddon, D. 303 and n., 306n.
 Sedenga (= Ateye) 257
 sedentary life, people 79, 275, 276, 308, 318,
 334, 337, 628; sedentarization 360, 681
 black sedentary population, Sahara 663,
 665, 666, 676, 683
 sedition 515
 Sedrata 606, 618
 seeds 67, 79, 350
 Sefar 316
 segments (backed stone tools) 64, 65, 67
 Segoukoro 337
 Seleukeia 149
 Seleukos 149; Seleukid kings, kingdom 149,
 156, 158–60, 162; invasion of Egypt
 228
 self-government, civic 152
 Seligman, C. G. 375 and n.
 Seljūq Turks 633
seluka, stick cultivation 219, 220, 258
Sema, tomb of Alexander 150
 semi-arid zones 275
 Semitic-speaking peoples 6, 7; *see also under*
 languages
 Semonin, P. 718
 senate, council: Carthage 119, 122; Cyrene
 165; Egypt. 197; *gerousia*, Alexandria
 194, 197; Rome 191
 senatorial provinces 191–2
 Seneca 256, 297
 Senegal r. 134, 272, 293, 645, 648, 667, 671,
 675, 676; upper Senegal 89, 139, 671
 Senegal Republic 17, 80, 318, 338, 348, 675;
 Senegal coastlands 315n., 318
 Senegal/Morocco navigation 296
 Senegambia megaliths 312 and n.
 Senkamanisken, king 213, 214, 217, 236
 Sennar 259, 588
 Septem (= Šibta, Ceuta) 513
 Septuagint 412, 418
 Serapion 373
 Serenje district 379
 Serenus 423
 serfs 550
 Sergius, patriarch 450
 serological studies 70
 Sertorius 189
 Servant, M. 43n.
 Sesheke 382
 Sesibi 269
 Seti I 325
 Setif 600, 602
 settled life (North Africa) 411
 settlements, fortified (*castella*) 458; perma-
 nent 347, 357
 Seven Nomes (Middle Egypt) 194
 Severus, Alexander, emperor 457; Septimius
 Severus, emperor 197, 201, 202 and n.,
 206, 421, 423, 454, 455; 697; Basilica
 487; Severi 192, 202n., 205, 290, 422;
 Severan reforms 197, 206
 Severus, patriarch 444 and n., 445, 446;
 Severans 448
 Severus (= Sāwīrūs b. Muqaffa') 494, 495,
 501, 545, 546, 558
 Sfax 535, 638
 Shabako, king 211, 326

INDEX

- Shaban, M. A. 503n., 710, 711
 Shabona (Sudan) 77
 Shackleton, N. and Kennett, J. P. 17n.
shaduf 219, 257
 al-Shāfi'i 537, 538, 539; Shafi'ites 539, 540, 541
shahāda, declaration of faith 656
shamla, shawl, vestment 576
 al-Shammākhī 710
 Shanakdakhete, queen 230, 241, 254, 255;
 chapel 242–3
 share-cropping 617
shari'a, *shar'* 'enactment', 'fountain', 'way',
 Islamic Law 491, 540, 542, 610, 656,
 660, 661, 675
 Shaw, Thurston 71, 302, 306 and n., 328n.,
 331 and n., 338, 686
 Shaybān, uncle of Hārūn b. Khumārawayh
 601
 Shaykhs, Almoravid 664
 shea butter (*garfi*) 314; nuts 67; tree
 (*Butyrospermum parkii*) 313
 Shebitku, king 211
 sheep: Barbary 52, 60; fat-tailed 374, 396;
 mummified 317; North African 109,
 129, 144, 155, 198, 517; South Africa
 375
 and goats 73 and n., 78, 80, 303, 315, 317
 and n., 318, 380, 383, 388
 Shekanda 585
 shellfish 53, 58, 64, 67, 77; shell mounds 60,
 272
 Shemamum, king 585
 Shenute 433n., 439, 442; *Life* 433n., 439
 Shenute (= Duke Sanutius) 499
 Sherbro Sound 298
 Sherkarer, king 46, 252
 Shi'a 'party' (of 'Ali) 538, 540, 555, 589, 599,
 656; Egypt 579; 'heretics', *rawāfiḍ* 589,
 657, 658; North-West Africa 541, 543,
 628, 633, 657, 658; Persia (Buwayhids)
 608, 609; propaganda 526; revolts 521,
 589, 607
 shields, oxhide 247
 Shinnie, P. L. 311n., 326, 577n., 695, 696,
 698, 703, 713; and Chittick, H. N. 713
 Shinqit 666
 ships 100, 134, 135, 293, 296, 299, 617
 Shiraz 608
 Shire r. 380
 Shona 395
 Shongwe tradition ('Dambwa group') 382
Shorter Encyclopaedia of Islam 710
 shrines 239; Circumcellion 471; *see also*
 temples
 Shukayr (*ṣāhib al-barīd*) 592
shurāt (= Kharijite) 645n.
 Shu'ūbiya, 'the nationalisms' 545
 Siaspiqa, king 214
 Šibta (= Septem, Ceuta) 513
 Sicca (= Le Kef) 130, 133, 170, 184
 Sicily: Greek 113, 120, 121, 122, 123, 131,
 167, 172; Carthaginian 120, 121, 122,
 123, 124, 131, 144, 167–9, 172; Roman
 124, 144, 168, 169, 172; Byzantine 446,
 488, 532, 632; Muslim raids, expeditions
 516, 520, 534, 535, 539, 551, 554, 555,
 594, 598; Muslim 599n., 600, 603, 614,
 616, 623, 634; Muslim/Byzantium
 treaty 621, 632
 eastern 120, 632; western 117, 120, 123,
 124, 130, 168
 ships 113, 124, 617
 sickles 60, 307; iron 360; sickle gloss 57
 Sidi Abderrahman (site) 35
 Sierra Leone 65, 136, 332, 348
 Siga (= Rachgoun) 118, 128, 179, 181
sihr, 'in-law' 654
 Siiraiien, A. 371n.
sijillāt, official letters 624
 Sijilmāsa: Almoravids 654, 662, 663, 664;
 Banū Khazrūn 627; Buluggin 623, 625;
 dhurra 313; Fatamids 614, 619, 647; gold
 619, 645, 646, 647; Kharijites 641, 642,
 659; Mahdi 601 and n., 602, 605;
 merchants 641, 645; Miknāsa/Banū
 525, 553, 605, 606, 644, 645; trans-
 Saharan routes, trade 595, 618, 642,
 645, 648, 650, 651, 652, 716
 Silā 675
 'silent trade' 137, 138, 296, 646
 Silko, king 271, 447 and n., 559
 silks 617
 Silla (Takrur) 313, 670, 671
 Sillègue 462
silphion 110, 127, 198
 Silvanus, bishop 462n., 465, 467
 silver 94, 163; bullion, coin 94, 125, 619;
 North-West Africa 595, 645; Spain 117,
 130, 171; tribute, customs 99, 127
 objects of 225, 260, 270, 553, 585
 Silverleaves site, tradition 393
Simmopithecus oswaldi, giant baboon 34
 Simon, king 569
 Simonides 244
simsār (pl. *samāsira*), agent 616
 Sinai 149, 288n., 316, 319
 Sinkat 573
sira, biography of Muḥammad 591, 710
 Siti, king 586
 Sitifis (= Setif) 208
 Sittius, Publius 187, 189, 201
 Siwa oasis 86, 98, 115, 146, 288
siyāsa shar'īya, legitimate expediency 542, 605

INDEX

- Skeat, T. C. and Wegener, E. P. 423n.
 skeletal material: human 270, 335–7, 351, 394, 398; vertebrate 272
 skins, pelts 51, 53 and n., 58, 138, 220; leopard 220; clothing 21; vessels 60
 skulls, crania 20, 53, 68, 69, 224, 250
 Skylax 100; *see also* pseudo-Skylax
 Slane, M. G. de (ed., transl.) 553n., 644n., 654n., 709, 715
 slaves: as gifts 638; tribute 100, 638; *see also bagt*
 domestic 339, 638; as oarsmen 125; as soldiers 512, 528–9, 550, 591, 593, 638, 639; *see also abid*
 slave army 528–9, 536, 591; *see also abid*
 slave-girls, women 70, 90, 119, 329, 550, 609, 644
 slave labour 115, 129, 131, 536, 538, 550, 636, 638; skilled 617
 slave-raids 127, 275, 283, 291, 338, 339, 341, 638, 639, 670
 slave revolt 131, 592
 slogans 604
 smallholding, Byzantine 612
 small stock 344, 386; *see also individual names*
 Smallwood, E. M. 696
 Smith, Abdullahi 680n., 683n., 717
 Smith, P. E. L. 60n.
 ‘Smithfield’ industry (= pre-Wilton, Albany, Oakhurst complex) 63; ‘Smithfield A’ (= Lockstock industry of Oakhurst complex) 64
 smiths 433; *see also under* iron
 Smolla, G. 371n.
 snails 347
 Snowden, F. 697
 Snowden, J. D. 310 and n.
 So *see* Sao
 Soba 563, 572, 588
 social organization 82, 337, 338; sciences 12
 society, Islamic 545
 socio-political development 666–7
 Sofala, ‘land of Sofala’ 392, 409
 Soh, Siré Abbas 676, 717
 soils 361
 soldiers 151, 201, 550; *see also* army; mercenaries; slaves
 Soli *see* Soloeis
 Soli people (Zambia) 384
solidus 619
 Solignac, M. 535n.
 Soloeis (= Soli) 117; Cape Soloeis (? = Cape Cantin) 128, 138
 Solomon, king (Nubia) 580
 Somalia 79, 196, 373, 686
 Somers Clarke 713
 Somme v. 30n.
 Songhay 341, 650, 671, 677–9, 717
 Sönghe, P. G. Visser, D. J. L., and Lowe, C. Van Reit 689
 Soninke 338, 666, 669, 670, 671, 672, 673, 674, 675, 717
 Soper, R. C. 366 and n., 371n., 372n., 686, 702, 703; and Golden, B. 687
 sorghum: Congo forest 402; eastern and southern Africa 344, 350, 385; North and West Africa 10, 71, 81, 309, 310–11, 313–14, 343; wild species 78, 302, 310–11, 346
 Sorghum spp. 71, 309, 311
 Sorko 679
sortes Vandalarum 480, 482
 Sosibios 156
 Sosius Culcianus, prefect 426
 Sotades, potter 244
 Soter II *see* Ptolemy VIII Soter II
 Sotho 395; Sotho-Tswana 396, 397
 Soubour, Soubos (= Wadi Sebou) 300
 Soucira island (= Mogador) 292, 293, 298
 Souk Ahras (= Thagaste) 472
 Souk el-Khmis (= Saltus Burunitanus) 410n.
 sources *see* evidence, literary
 sourveld 14
 Sous 299, 516n., 553, 554, 596
 Sousse 489, 516n., 555, 604, 611, 635, 636; Christian cemeteries 459; mosque, *ribāi*, citadel 532, 544, 550, 551–2
 South Africa 14; hominids, Stone Age 17, 30, 33, 63, 66, 78, 685, 688–90; Early Iron Age 374, 375, 378, 397, 702
 South Africans (white) 392
 South Arabia 430; South Arabian period (Ethiopia) 262
 South-East Africa 311
 South-East Asia 531–2
 South India, missions 411
 South-West Africa, Namibia 374, 375
 south-west Asian animals 73, 76
 south-western Africa 2, 10
 southern Africa 34, 54, 65, 66, 69, 342, 386–405, 702
 Southern Highlands (Tanzania) 344
 southern Italy/Tunisia land-bridge 16
 Souville, G. 319 and n.
 sowing, intentional 79, 346
 Sozusa (= Apollonia) 505
 Spain 494, 605, 615, 658, 716; s. Spain 117, 123–4, 171, 321; ‘Hercules’ 177–8; Phoenicians, Carthaginians 117, 120, 172–3; Greeks 120; Romans 121, 172, 173, 180, 181, 187, 189, 190; Byzantines 468; Visigoths 444, 482, 513, 516; Umayyads 511, 516, 520, 533, 606, 624, 627, 647, 663; Almoravid 654, 665

INDEX

- Spain (*cont.*)
 auxiliaries 199; *diocese* 208; exiles, refugees 533, 645, 665; peoples 125, 145; silver mines 117, 124, 130, 619; trade 117, 139, 525, 550, 595, 597
 Sparta 98, 105, 109
 specialization, occupational 10; geographical 38
 Spendios 170
 Speratus 452
 spices 164, 288, 617; cinnamon 156, 164
 spindle-whorls 390
 'splintered' stone tools 65
 springbok 34
 Spruytte, M. J. 278 and n., 279 and n.
 Stanton, W. R. 302n.
 state interest in trade 617
 state-building 372, 676, 677, 684, 718
 stateless societies 338
 states, fluid 568
 statesmen 550
 state-systems, Berber 176
 statues: Augustus 246, 247, 250; gold 225; life-size 597; stone 326
 stela: Aksumite 263; Kushite 216, 228, 242, 249–50
 Stephanos 580
stepharis (title) 582
 Stern, S. M. 499n.
 Stevenson, J. (ed.) 461n., 465n.
 stewards 536
 Stewart C. C. (ed.) 711
 Stewart, capt. 316
 stimulus diffusion 39, 59, 77
 Stiture' (= Darius) 99
 stock enclosures 372, 387
 stock-keeping 79–80, 82, 86, 198, 275, 318; southern and eastern Africa 342, 343, 350, 360, 376, 407; *see also* animal husbandry; herding
 Stoics 416, 418
 stone: artefacts 24, 26, 689; axes 347, 350, 358, 359, 402; grooved stones 347; hammer stones, pounders 236; hoes 402; saddle querns 236; tools, toolkit 26, 27, 29, 38, 39, 83, 318, 330; weights (digging stick) 307; vocabulary 359
 buildings, walls 52, 236, 262, 304, 340, 372–3, 390, 402, 668, 674; circles 372
 industries, techniques 26, 37 and n., 47, 272, 302; *see also* under particular techniques
 stone-throwing 28
 stone-using communities 318, 374
 Stone Age 318, 342, 353, 367, 369; food production 350, 369; hunters 342, 360; neglect (South Africa) 392; sites 280
 Early 287; Middle 287, 687, 688, 689, 690; later 287, 332, 379, 686–90, 701; survivals 332, 335
 Stone Bowl culture, people 350, 351, 352, 369, 396, 690
 Strabo: chariots, horses 144, 283, 284; Meroe 238, 245, 246–7, 248, 249, 311n.; Northern Africa 140 and n., 182 and n., 299, 499 and n., 693, 694, 696
 Straits of Gibraltar 9, 137, 138
strategos (general): Cyrene 165; Egypt 151, 158, 194, 197
 stratification, social 390
 stratigraphic break, hiatus 43, 54, 61
 Stratonikis 442
 'Stratopeda' camps 92, 97
 Street, F. A. and Grove A. T. 43n., 686
 students 551
 Stuiwer, M. and Van der Merve, N. J. 395n.
 Suakin 155
su'al, 'question' 539
 subsistence economics 276, 535, 615
 Subur (= Sebou) 299
 succession: Libyans 146 and n.; Nubia 213, 216, 224, 237, 575, 581; Numidia 183, 185
sūdān (sing. *aswad*), Sūdān, 'Blacks' 529, 550n., 593, 597, 612, 638, 642, 680, 681; kings 653; lands 643, 645, 646, 647, 650, 651, 655, 666, 676; Sudanese 591, 665, 669
 Sudan: central 81, 554, 638; eastern 77, 86, 268, 310, 322, 326, 349, 350, 406; western 9, 341, 587, 667
 Almoravids, Islam 662, 684; food production agriculture 10, 309, 310, 312, 316, 343, 344, 349, 690; kings, kingdoms 341, 639, 642, 643, 645, 667, 680, 716; people 143, 311n., 332, 645, 650, 681
 Sudanic climate 15
 Suenkur, episcopal *see* 583
 Suetonius Paulinus 286
 Suez, Isthmus 16, 17, 70, 155
 Sufes (North-West Africa) 485
sufet, 'judge', magistrate (Carthage) 119, 122, 133, 172, 178, 179, 203; Numidia, Mauretania 184, 203
 Sufetula (= Sbeitla) 507
sūf, wool 549
sufī, Sufism 549, 552; *Sūfiya* (Alexandria) 533n., 549, 551
Sufri, 'yellow', Sufrites (Kharijites) 518, 520, 521, 525, 540, 605, 614, 644, 645, 647; *Sufri Warfajjūma* 522; *Sufriyya* 642
 suicide (kings of Meroe) 228, 237

INDEX

- Sulaymān, uncle of Idris II 553
ṣulbiyya (Christians), revolt 591
ṣulḥ, 'peace' 502
 Sulla 186, 189
sulṭa, 'power', 'government' 527; *sulṭan* 'man of power' 527, 528, 535, 542 and n., 543, 547, 555; North-West Africa 593 and n., 595, 602, 626, 627, 628, 631, 634, 645, 636; (= government) 617
 Summers, R. 388n., 394n., 690, 702, 704; and Robinson, K. R. and Whitty, A. 387n.
 sun deity 132, 145–6, 252; sun disc 265
 'Sun Temple' 223, 239, 259
summa practice of the community 531, 537, 538, 539, 655, 656, 659, 672; Sunnites 538, 540–1, 543, 554, 579, 605, 642, 647
 Sunni: coin legend 633; coterie 632; slogans 604; sources 610
sūq, market 615, 616; at Ṣabra 631
Sūq Ḥamza (= Boufra) 617
 surplus 617
 Surt 642
 Sus, Sūs 516 and n., 520, 525, 540, 638, 639, 647, 658, 661; Sūs al-Adnā, 'hither Sus' 516n., 553; Sūs al-Aqṣā, 'farthest Sus' 516 and n., 645, 651, 656, 658
 Sutton, J. E. G. 369n., 690, 702, 703; and Roberts, A. D. 372n., 408n.
 Swanscombe 31
Swartziya pods 67
 Swaziland 362, 374, 393, 408
 sweet potato 402
 Syene (= Aswan) 246, 247, 250
 symbiotic relationship (herder/cultivator) 79, 276
 symbolism 52, 60
 Symmachus bible 418
 Sympetesis (Ptolemy Sympetesis) 166
 synagogues 451, 631
 syncretic doctrines 658
 Syphax, king of Mauri 178; chief of Masaesylii 172, 173, 179, 180, 181; successors 181, 182
 Syracuse 121, 123, 165, 168, 598
 Syria: frontier 479, 596; north 609, 620; south 149, 156, 158, 159, 160
 Stone Age 42; Assyrian 89, 90, 91, 94–5, 107; Babylonian 96; Persian 103, 104, 105, 106, 107; Seleucid 149, 150, 158, 159, 163, 164; Roman 162, 207, 247; Christian 432, 437, 443, 444, 451; Arab conquest 497, 504, 533; Moslem 7, 520, 526, 590, 596–7, 602–3, 608–9, 622; Isma'ili/Fatimid 9, 599–600, 601, 602, 622, 623, 624, 626, 629; Carmathians etc. 600, 603, 608–9, 620, 624
 Syrian influence, Meroe 243
 Syrians 288, 290, 515, 527, 550, 620
 Syrtis (= Sidra), Gulf 109, 121, 127, 142 279, 335, 507
ṣa'a, 'obedience' 511, 626
Ṭabaqāt, biographical literature 709
 al-Tabrī 558
 Tabennisse 428, 433
Tabirqa?, king 230
 'Table of the Sun' 223
Tablettes Albertini 483
 Tacfarinas 200
 Tacitus 695
 al-Tādīlī 658
 Tadla 663
 Tadmekka (= Es Souk) 313, 609, 643, 644, 650, 659
 Tafilelt 313, 525, 553, 595, 605, 629, 644, 649
 Taforalt 43
 Tagant 648, 666
 Taghaza 648, 652
 Tagra 77
 Tāharqa, king 90, 91, 210, 211, 213, 222, 224, 237, 326; temple 221
 Tahert, Tāhart, Tihart (= Tiaret): Abū Yazid 610, 611; conquest 606; control 614, 623, 624, 626, 627; *imām* 641, 642; Kharijite capital 523, 524, 545, 553, 709; refugees 545, 550, 553; region to west 525; routes, relations with Sudan 642, 643, 648, 649, 677, 678; trade, Ibadites 595, 603, 606, 618, 641
 'Tahpanhes' (? = Daphne) 96
 Taieb, M. and others 211.
ṭa'ifa 'group' (Sūfiya) 533n.
 Taifa (Nubia) 568
 tailors 433
tājir, merchant 616; *tājir al-sulṭan*, 'sultān's merchant' 617
 Takārīr, 'people of Taktur' 675, 676
 Takedda (prob. = Azelik) 321
 Takezze (= r. Atbara) 260
takhmīs, *takhmīs al-Barbar* 517; *akhmās* ('fifths') 517
 Takideamani, king 230
 Takin, governor 603, 604, 607
 Taktūr 313, 314, 637, 670, 675–7, 682; 711, 715 black population 676
ṭalaba, scholars 664
 Talakhmani, king 214, 218, 221, 222
 Talbi, M. 552n., 594n., 598n., 602 and n., 711, 715
talent 99 and n., 127
 Talid, governor 504
 Talkāta 606

INDEX

- Tallqvist, K. L. 715
 Talmis 560
 Talmud, Talmudic Judaism 451, 530, 537
 Tamale Port (Ghana) 331
 Tamaya Mellet 335
 Tāmdult 553, 595, 648, 649
 Tamerledeamani, king 231
 Tamesna 555
 Tamin b. Mu'izz 635, 636
 Tanezrouft 272, 275
 tang, tanged flakes, points 42, 48, 59
 Tanganyika, lake 364, 377, 379, 384
 Tangier (= Tinja) 292, 512, 513, 516, 517, 518, 520, 525, 526, 614; *see also* Tingi
 Tanit, Tanit Pene Baal, 'Tanit face of Baal', moon goddess 132n., 146, 203, 454, 693
 tanning 616
 Tanqasi 266
 Tanquassi island 587
 Tanwetamani, king 90, 91, 210, 213, 214, 218
 Tanyidamani, king 230, 242
 Tanzania: central 352, 364, 372, 376, 396, 687; coast 300; north 35, 369, 372; north-east 362, 369, 374; north-west 364; south 295, 380; southern highlands 399; south-west 362, 377, 380
 Taormina 598
 Tārashnā (Muḥammad Tārashnā) 653, 654, 655, 665, 676
 Tarenkeniwal, king 230
 Tarentum (= Taranto) 168
 Tarif, great-grandfather of Yūnus 555
 Ta'riḳh al-Fattāsh 339, 340, 671, 673 and n., 674, 679 and n., 717
 Ta'riḳh al-Sūdān 340, 473, 474, 479 and n., 717
 Tarin 291
 Tāriq b. Ziyād 511, 512, 513
 Tarn, W. and Griffith, G. T. 694
 Tarsus 596
 Tartessos (? = Tarshish) 117, 120, 121
 Taruga 330, 331, 333, 334, 341, 362
 Tassili n'Ajjer 279, 280, 283, 313, 316, 317
 Tātāntāl 648, 652
 Taubenschlag, R. 695
 Taucheira (Tocra), (= Arsinoe) 108, 166
 Tauxier, H. 298 and n., 700
 taxation: Egypt; Ptolemaic 154, 161, 162, 163, Roman 195, 196–7, 207, 696, Christian 422, 424, 425, 711, Muslim 499, 513, 514, 522, 534, 589, 590, 591; in North-West Africa, Carthage 130, 169, 170, 173–4, Roman 204, 205, Christian 457, 458, 486, Muslim 518, 593n., 599n., 610, 615, 617
 taxes, Muslim 493, 507; canonical 660; illegal 660, 664; land-tax, *kharaḳ* 514; poll-tax, *jizya* 499, 507, 513, 514; tithe, *ushr*, *sadaqa* 514, 660
 tax collectors, collection 161, 197, 205, 424, 433, 506, 536, 547, 617; tax-collecting tour 621, 635; tax exemption 499, 507; tax farming, farmers 500, 536, 547, 548, 589, 613; tax-lists 514, 548; tax-paying subjects 506; refusal to pay 553
 Tāzrūt 600
 Tchad 362
 Tebesa 464, 486; *see also* Theveste
 technical innovation 39, 42, 70
 technicians 550
 technology: Stone Age 10, 346, 349; Late Pliocene/Lower Pleistocene 26, 82; Oldowan 30, 32, 83; Acheulean 34; Late Lower/Middle Palaeolithic 34, 37, 38, 39, 41, 48, 54, 84; Terminal Pleistocene/Early Holocene 10, 77
 West Africa, Mauritania 277, 322, 327, 341
 Teda 275, 276, 333, 337; Teda/Tubu 680
 teeth, dentition 28
 teff (cereal) 81
 Tegdaust 283, 308, 337, 340, 618 and n., 649
 Teguida 322
Telfairia occidentalis, fluted pumpkin 313
 Tell, North-West African 552
 Tella (Syria) 444
 Tellem caves 337
 Temara 35
 Tementhes (? = Tanwetamani) 91, 92
 temple art, Nubia 221, 223, 227, 228, 253–4, 259
 temple lands 151, 154; prostitution 133; revenues 101, 103
 temples: Cyrenaica 97; Ammon at Siwa 146
 Egypt 99, 103, 105, 151, 160, 423; Amun-Re' at Thebes 146; Apis at Memphis 101n.; Greek 97; Jewish 412
 Ethiopia 262, 263
 North-West Africa: Baal Hammon, Carthage 132; Roman 457
 Nubia: Amara East 250; Argo 222; Dendur 560; Hamdab 249; Jebel Barkal 210, 211, 217, 221; Kalabsha 258; Kawa 222; Lower Nubia 258; Malenzqen 237; Meroe 223, 231, 239, 249, 250, 251, 326; Musawwarat es-Sofra 226, 227, 238, 253, 254; Napata 214, 216, 222, 224, 231, 238, 239; Naqa 251, 252–3, 254; Philae 560; Sadenga 213; Sanam 211
 Syria: Melkart at Tyre 119

INDEX

- tenant farmers 471; *see also* peasants
 Tenere desert 86, 272, 275, 307; Tenerian period 306
 Tenes (Cartennae) 128
 Tengström, E. 471n., 707, 708
 Teqerideamani, king 231, 257, 326
 Teritadakhatey, king 231
 Teriteqas, king 242, 248, 249
 Teritnide, king 231
 terminology, archaeological 68;
 Ternifine 35
 terraced platforms 372
 terracottas 313, 330; terracotta rasps 347
terra sigillata 257
 Terrasse, H. 663, 711
 territory 85
 Tertullian (Quintus Septimus Florens Tertullianus) contrast with Clement 416, 417; on North-West Africa 204 and n.; North African Church 451 and n., 452 and n., 453 and n., 454 and n., 455–7 and n., 459n., 460; writings 7, 203, 707
 Teutsch, L. 697
 textiles, royal monopoly 154
 Thābit 504
 Thagaste (= Souk Ahras) 472–3 and n., 476
 Thamugadi (= Timgad) 469, 476
 Thannyras, son of Inaros 102
 Thapsus, battle 128, 288
 thatched roofs 385
 Theadelphia 434
 Thebaid 193, 208, 246, 425, 426, 449, 561
 Thebes (Egypt) 89 and n., 90, 91, 98, 113, 105, 161, 325
 Thelepte 486
 Theodora, empress 445, 446, 447, 448, 487, 561
 Theodore (Theodoros) of Philae, bishop 448, 560, 561
 Theodore, brother of Peter, governor 504
 Theodosius I, emperor 431, 432, 444
 Theodosius II 437, 438, 440
 Theodosius, Augustal prefect 443
 Theodosius, patriarch 445, 446, 448; Theodosians 448
 Theodotion bible 418
Theoi Adelphoi, brother-and-sister gods 150
Theoi Soteres, saviour gods 150
 theology, Alexandrian 415, 416; in Egypt 411, 421; in North-West Africa 411, 482, 486; Muslim 538
 theology, doctrines: of the Divine Word 418, 432–3; of Grace 410; of the Incarnation 410, 435–6; of the Trinity 418
Homousios, 'of the same substance' 428, 429, 431; *kenosis*, 'self-emptying' 445; *monophysis*, 'one nature', Monophysitism 416, 433, 437, 438, 440, 441; Monothelete 488; 'one-nature' *see* Monophysitism; predestination 411, 418, 477; 'two natures' 435, 436, 438, 486
 of Apollinarius 432–3; Arius 427–8; Athenasius 231, 232; Augustine 410, 475, 477, 482; Clement 416; Cyprian 460; Cyril 410, 435–6; Donatists 469; Julian of Halicarnassus 445; Nestorius 435; Nicene formula 428, 429, 431; Nubian Church 557, 558, 563; Origen 417–18, 427; Pelagius 477; Sabellians 421; Severus 445
Theon Ochema ('Chariot of the Gods') 298, 300
 Theophanes 443 and n.
 Theophilus of Alexandria 433, 435
 theosophy 415
Theotokos, 'God-bearing' 435, 436, 441
 Thera, Therans 107, 108, 109, 110
 Therapeutae 414
 thermoluminescence dates 76
 Theveste (= Tebessa) 129, 169, 199, 200, 464, 483 and n., 486, 707
 Thibiua 482
 Thibron 114
 Thomassey, P., Mauny, R. and Szumowski 674, 717
 Thouvenot, R. 484–5n.
 Thrace 152; metropolitan 417, 432
 Thrasamund, king 481, 482, 485
 throne 581
 throwing sticks 53
 Thubunae (= Tobna) 524
 Thuburbo Maius 483n., 486
 Thucydides 692
 Thugga 129, 133, 184, 185, 203; *see also* Dougga
thughār, 'the marches' (Cilicia) 596
 thumb-rings, stone 223
 Thymiateria (? = Mehedia) 128
 Thysdrus (= El Djem) 205
 Tiaret (= Tahert) 523, 606; *see also* Tahert
 Tiber r. 456
 Tiberius 247
 Tibesti 276, 280, 283, 300, 316, 337, 650
tibr, gold dust 619
 Tichit 306, 666, 701; agriculture 304–6, 308, 311; metals, copper 321, 341; rock art, chariots 280; villages 275, 304–5, 311, 316 and n., 339, 340, 701
 Tidra 293
tifnagh 185
 Tigre 265
 Tigris r. 149, 589
 Tijkja 666

INDEX

- Tilbye (= Ibrim) 430n.
 Tilemsi valley 309, 341
 Tillabery 679
 Timbuktu 284, 336, 341, 650, 652; *ta'riks* 673, 679, 717; see *Ta'riks al-Fattāsh*; *Ta'riks al-Sūdān*
 Timgad (= Thamugadi) 470, 476, 483, 484, 488
 Timotheos, bishop 430n.
 Timothy, 'the Cat', bishop 440, 441, 445, 705
 Timothy, 'wobble-cap', bishop 440
 Timothy III, bishop 444, 445
 tin 117, 121, 122, 276, 301, 320, 322, 323
 Tin Hinan, tomb 301, 306, 313, 334
 Tin Lalou 335
 Tin-n-Bārūtān b. Usfayshar, Ti-n-Yārūtān b. Wisanu b. Nizar 291, 652, 653, 654, 655
 Tingi (= Tangier) 128, 178, 188, 189, 190, 199; 'Tinga', mother of Syphax 178
 Tinja (= Tangier) 513
 Tinnis 503, 533
 Tipasa 478 and n., 481n., 482
 titles, in diplomatic correspondence 634; Meroe 227; Pharaonic 151; Roman/Greek 484
 Tixier 307
 Tlemcen: area 523, 605, 623, 625, 626, 641; base for raids 516; rebellion 624; routes 513, 525, 648, 649; ruler 516, 517, 520, 522, 553, 605, 627; see also Pomaria
 Tobias, P. V. 24n., 394n., 690
 Tobna (Tubna) (= Thubunae) 524, 535, 626
 Tokiltoeton, king 560
 Tokra 505
 toleration 641, 642
 tolls 631, 652, 669
 Tolmeta (= Ptolmais, port of Barce) 166
 tombs: Egypt 594; Ghana (ancient) 668; North-West Africa 483, 484; Nubia 210–59
 tombstones, gravestones 563, 572, 576, 579, 580; Arabic 573, 582
 Tome of Pope Leo 437, 440, 441, 450
 Tondidarou 321, 341
 -tooke, 'banana' 403
 tools: metal, iron 49, 320, 342, 345, 352, 360, 373, 402; hoes 385, 394 and n., mining tools 393; razor 381
 stone (hoe, axe etc.) 307, 346, 347, 348; digging 34; microlithic 347; wood-working 49
 tool-making, using 13, 17, 20, 24–30, 689; see also under technology
 Torah, Pentateuch 414, 530, 537
 Tore (? = Sanam Abu Dom) 225
 Tornberg, C. J. (ed.) 654n., 663n., 709
 Toro 368
 Torrey, C. C. (ed.) 638n., 708
 tortoises 28; tortoise-shell 164, 373
 totems, group 338
 towns, cities 6, 8, 302, 410, 457, 645; Egypt 43, 152, 422, 500, 501, 547, 593; Libya 144; North-West Africa 189, 205, 207, 290, 454, 464, 615–6; decline, restoration 458, 463, 470, 483, 486, 489; Nubia 237–8, 570–2, 584; Sahel/Sudan 649, 668, 669, 674, 677, 678, 681
 Tozeur 644
 trade: caravan 615; local 408, 616; long-distance 390, 408, 490, 615, 616; monopoly 124, 125, 156, 617; Stone Age 66; water-borne; river 402, 593, 631; sea 430, 525, 595, 615, 617; Atlantic 554, 639; Indian Ocean 164, 195–6, 443, 596, 631; Persian Gulf, China 596; Mediterranean 341, 596, 615, 616, 617, 630; Red Sea; Aksum 263, 264, 443; Egypt 155, 163–4, 195–6, 263, 596, 631; Nubia 220, 245, 263, 266, 430; world 277
 in Aksum 263; Egypt, with Arabia and the East 430, 443; with Syria, Iraq 631; with Libya 631; with Nubia 155, 238, 244, 257; with Greece 79, 100, 102; with Cyrenaica 110; North-West Africa northern Sahara 525, 550, 595, 615, 616, 618, 630, 631, 718; Carthage 121, 125, 204, 693; Sijilmasa 645, 646; Nubia 155, 220, 238, 244, 257; Sahara 334, 341, 616, 637–51, 663, 667, 672, 693, 697; camels 289; chariots 283; Gao 677–8; gold 618, 669, 716; see also Garamantes; Ibadites; Sudan 684, 718; West Africa, Igbo Ukwu 338
 slave trade: Arab (tribute) 505, 507, 525, 550, 638; see also *baqq*; Atlantic 341; Nubia 506–7, 594; Sahara 127, 290, 295, 339, 566, 616, 638–9, 682
 trade goods 283; animals for games 189, 204, 290, 301; for meat 596, 616; balm 288; camels 647; cattle 647, cedar wood 140, 189, 204; cinnamon 156, 164; cloth 124, 594, 616; copper 381, 392, 408; corn 94, 174, 182, 184, 505, 524, 596; cotton 596; cowrie shells 381; crops 505, 524, 616; dates 616, 649; ebony 94, 220; flax 596; food and drink, foodstuffs 87, 404, 505, 524, 615; frankincense 156; fruit 596; gold 408; in Carthage 124, 127, 128,

INDEX

- 137, 138, 295, 596, 646; in Ghana (ancient) 639, 667; in Muslim North-West Africa 525, 618–19, 641, 644, 645, 646, 647, 649, 652, 716; in Nubia 94, 156, 220, 647; in Zimbabwe 392; grain 594, 615; grapes 649; hides 110, 128, 138, 178, 290; horses 639; iron objects, weapons 373, 408; ore 408; tools 373; ivory, Bantu Africa 373, 390, 392, 409; Cerne 138; Mauretania/Numidia 128, 178, 189, 204; Nubia 94, 156; Red Sea/Somalia 156, 164, 196, 220, 245, 264; trans-Saharan 127, 290, 361; jewellery 616; linen 94; livestock 524; luxury goods 615, 669; manufactures 524, 615; metals 87, 408; olive oil 94, 596, 616; olives 616; ostrich feathers 220; papyrus 94; pepper 164; perfume 124, 138; pottery 379, 404; precious metals 390; precious stones 127, 178, 204, 301; primary products 615; 'purple' 127; raisins 648; rhinoceros horn 164; salt 277, 341, 408, 667, 669; sheep 647; *silphion* 110, 127, 198; silver 94, 117, 125; skins 138, 220; leopard skins 220; spices 164; tin 117, 121, 124; tortoiseshell 164, 373; trinkets 124; vegetables 596; wheat 373, 649; wine 94, 124, 127, 138, 373, 567; wool 110
- trade routes 276; land, east of Red Sea 220, 245; Nubian desert 220, 244–5, 258; trans-Saharan 292, 642, 643, 644, 652, 667, 672, 677, 716; Sahel/Sudan 669, 670, 671; Sijilmasa 644, 645, 648; Tripoli/Fezzan 127, 204, 638; *see also* chariot tracks; sea 220, 373–4, 430, 443, 525; *see also under* trade
- trade system, network 408, 550, 615, 667, 673
- traders, professional 616; Arab 156, 196, 288, 295, 301, 373, 499, 579; Berber 341; Carthaginian 127; Chinese 301; Eastern 550; Egyptian 156, 422, 567; Fez 664; Garamantes 127; Greek 92, 96, 196; Ibadite 9, 550, 616, 641, 644, 646, 652, 716; Indonesian 402; Italian 184; 186, 189; Jewish 616, 651, Muslim 551, 654, 670; Negro 301; Nubia 567, 582; Parthian 301; Phoenician 92, 138; Roman 301, 430 Scythian 301; Soninke 669, 673, 674
- traders' quarter (Ghana) 340
- tradesmen, small 471
- trading: contacts 121, 122, 407
families, Ibadite 550
posts, stations 117, 126, 245, 373, 671
- traditions 334, 340, 598n.; Arabic 491, 492, 493; Christian 459; Coptic Church 494 Egyptian 494; legal 492–3; *see also various stone-working and pottery traditions*
- traditores*, apostates 466, 467, 468, 469, 475
- tragelaphine antelopes (bushbuck, kudu) 39
- Trajan, emperor 253, 456
- tranchet* trapeze 48, 65
- transfer of power (Egypt) 622
- transformation, Berber, Arab 621
- transhumance 77, 82, 237, 277, 342
- Transjordan 620
- Transkei 344
- translation 495, 496
- transport 151, 283, 548, 616, 617, 670; camel 155, 204, 289, 292
- trans-Saharan contacts *see under* trade
- Transvaal 21, 52, 387, 393, 395, 396, 689
- trapeze 48, 58, 65
- traps, trapping 58, 64, 65
- travellers, Nubia 582
- treasury (*bayt al-māl*) 660, 662; Numidia 183; Egypt 546
- treaty 565, 573, 577–8, 621, 632; commercial 159
- Trebonianus Gallus, emperor 257
- trees, wild 313; tree crops 109, 129
- Triakontaschoenus 258
- tribal peoples 595; tribes 610, 621, 484, 489; tribalism, tribal life 411, 486; tribesmen 480, 605
- tribune (church) 570
- tribute: Carthage 118, 124, 128; Egypt 99, 593, 596, 597, 622; Muslim North-West Africa 489, 506; Nubia 585; Sahara/Sahel 276, 555, 638, 639, 653; slaves, human tribute 507, 511, 516, 525; *see also bagt*
- Trier 430
- Trigger, B. B. 256n., 269 and n., 325n., 326 and n., 698, 701
- tripanosomiasis 316, 317
- Tripoli 507, 587; 'Abbasids 595, 598; Arab conquest 506, 511, 512; control 534, 535, 623, 624, 628, 629, 632; Ibadites 518, 522, 523, 524, 641, 642, 644; Ibrahim II 597; massacre of Isma'īlis 629, 635; people 608; rebellion 609, 630; routes 634, 643; withdrawal to Tripoli 511; Zirid governor 627
- Tripolis, 'three cities' 127
- Tripolitania 59; agriculture 143, 411; Arabs 489; Berbers 595; Byzantines 486; camels 290; Carthage 121, 693; cities 118, 127, 183, 186; coastal area 123, 142, 175, 183; desert 284; Ibadites 523; Romans 199–205, 208, 697; Severi 289; Vandals 480, 484

INDEX

- trig Lamtūnī*, trans-Saharan route 554
 Tritonis, lake (? = Gulf of Gabes) 109, 143
 Troglodytes, 'troglodyte Ethiopians' 246, 283
 troops, Arab (North-West Africa) 639; see also *jund*
 trophy skulls 60
 Tschitolan 65
 tsetse fly 82, 317, 344
 Tshamfu 367
 Tshikapa 364, 397
 Tsonga 395
 Tuareg 333, 652
 tubers see root crops
 Tūbna see Tobna
 Tucker, A. N. 376n., 406 and n.
 Tughj b. Juff 601
 Tujib tribe 503
 Tukela 375
 Tukolor 675, 676, 677
 Tulunids 579, 592–7, 599n., 601, 608, 613;
 Tulunid governor 601, commander 601
 Tumbuka 384
 tumuli, Iron Age 321n., 341
 al-Ṭunbudhī 598
 Tunis: Phoenician/Carthaginian 123, 128, 131, 168; Christian 483; Muslim 509, 520, 528, 534, 597, 610, 624, 636
 baths 483; Great Mosque 544
 Tunisia 8, 9, 70, 453, 462n., 489, 494, 507, 624, 628; area, region 484, 610, 627, 628; coasts 117, 118, 128, 483, 509; southern 59, 284, 289, 459, 520, 521, 644; western 462; Tunisian sources 494
 Tunisian Dorasī 507
 Tunka Manin, king 669
 Tunnel rock shelter (Gokomere) 386, 387, 408, 702
 Tura 705
 Turān-Shāh, brother of Saladin 581, 583, 584
 turbans 651, 669
 Turkey, Turks 311, 527, 536, 589, 638; governors 601, 603; officers 536, 591; nobility 594; troops, guard 589, 590, 591, 607
 Turnbull, C. 403 and n.
 turtle 78
 'Tusca' (? = Mactar area) 175
 Tutankhamun 278, 325
 Tuttle, R. L. H. (ed.) 16n.
 tuyères 359
 Twelve Anathemas 436, 437, 441, 445
 Twickenham Road (Lusaka) 381
 Twin Rivers kopje 688
 Typha roots 29
 'tyrant', *tyrannos* 98 and n., 122
 Tyre 96, 117, 118, 119, 120, 140; Council of Tyre 430
 'Tyrians' (Phoenician mercenaries) 92
 Tzaneen 393
 Uan Muhuggiag 316
 Ubangi r. 405, 406
 Ubangui-Chari 312
 'Ubayd Allah (= Sa'id b. Ḥusayn, Mahdi) 602, 603, 604, 606, 609, 647
 'Ubayd Allah b. al-Ḥabḥāb, 'amil 515, 517, 520, 523, 593n.
 'Ubedeiya (Israel) 30
 Ucko, P. J. and Dimbleby, G. W. (eds.) 52n., 349n.
 'Uddat al-'Aziz, 'instrument of 'Aziz' 626
 Uele r. basin 366, 372n., 405
 Ugarida 349, 350, 367, 368, 369
 Uitkomst culture 395
 'Ukkāsha b. Ayyūb al-Fazārī 520
 'ulamā' (sing. 'ālim or 'alim), 'the wise' 531, 538, 542 and n., 543, 594, 610; Malikite 'umlamā' 629
 'Umar I 493, 504
 'Umar II 493
 'Umar b. Ḥafṣ Hazarmārd 534
 'Umar al-Hājī, father of Yahyā and Abū Bakr 655
 'Umar b. al-Khaṭṭab 565
 'Umar b. Shurahbil 567
 'Umāra Dūnqas, ruler of Funj 588
 al-'Umarī, writer 314, 317, 318
 al-'Umarī, Arab leader 578, 582, 593 and n.
 Umayyad dynasty 505, 507, 526, 527, 530; fall 513–22, 523, 570, 602, 603; laws and customs 537; pretender 528; troops 669
 Umayyads: Andalus, Cordoba (Spain) 529, 598, 606, 612, 623, 625, 626, 647, 663; North-West Africa 605, 614, 627, 628, 639, 641, 648
 umbrella, state 581, 607 and n.,
 Umm Mallāl, sister of Bādīs 630
 Umm al-'Ullū, sister of Mu'izz
Unknown Gospel 414
 Unūjūr 612, 520
 Upper Benue 354
 upper class, North-West Africa 618
 Upper Egypt: Saite 89; Assyrian 90; Ptolemaic 110, 152, 157, 158, 160, 194, 228; Roman 193, 294, 424; Christian 428, 431, 570; Muslim 499, 500, 528, 540, 561, 592, 608, 609, 612
 invasions, raids: Arabs 536, 586; Blemmyes 206, 208, 271, 424, 536; from

INDEX

- Nubia 193, 536, 569, 572, 578, 579, 583, 613, 620
 Upper Niger 139
 Upper Nile 86, 138, 447, *see also* Nubia
 Stone Age 43, 68, 71, 77, 78, 80, 81
 'Uqba b. Nāfi' 291, 507, 509, 512; descendants 516, 620, 639; conquests 506, 554, 564, 637, 638, 639, 643
 urban civilization 85, 205; aristocracies 435
 ureaus (on pottery) 243
 Urewe 367, 368, 397, 702; culture 378; *see also under* pottery
 Urvoy, Y. 683, 717
 Usambara mts 344, 371
 use-wear patterns 688
 Ushara 266
 'ushr, tithe (= *ṣadaqa*) 514, 660
Ustādh, 'tutor' (chief eunuch) 612, 621
uṣūl, 'roots', sources of Law 537, 539, 540
 'Uthmān, caliph 505
 'Uthmān b. Ṣāliḥ 510
 Utica 117, 118, 120, 123, 124, 126, 128, 170, 175, 202
 Uvinza salt springs 272, 408

 Vaal r. 375
 Vaga 175
 Valentinian II, emperor 474; Valentinian III 480
 Valentinus 415
 Valerian, emperor 420, 465
 Vanacker, C. 649, 718
 Vandals 289, 479, 480, 481, 485; Vandal Africa 289, 446, 480, 481, 485, 707; conquest 209, 471, 479–80; reconquest 446; religion 481, 482
 Van der Kloof dam 52
 Van der Merwe, N. J. 395 and n., 702
 Van Noten, F. 364
 Vansina, J. 402n.; and Mauny, R. and Thomas, L. V. 315n.
 Vantini, G. 558 and n., 712
Varanus niloticus, monitor lizard 297
 variability: biological 34; chronological 65; cultural 14; ecological 14; genetic 14, 24; geographical 65
 vases, Egyptian 287
 vassal kings' sons 669
 Vaufrey, Raymond 307 and n., 686
 vault, Nubian brick 570
 Vavilov, N. I. 310
 vegiculture: beginnings, spread 302, 304, 308, 309, 342, 349, 350, 352; forest, forest fringes 303, 368, 407; vocabulary 358–9
 Vegesus 288
 vegetables 313, 314, 596, 666, 668
 vegetable foods, wild 302, 305, 344, 346
 oils, cultivation 155; monopoly 155
 remains 688
 vegetation 2, 13, 39, 67, 81, 287, 666
 veil (face) 651
 Venus (goddess) 133
 Vermina, son of Syphax 181, 182
 Vescera (= Biskra) 199, 201
 vessels, sea-going 293; *see also* ships
 veterans, settlement 201–2
 'vicar' (*vicarius*) 207
 viceroys: Meroitic 568; Muslim 535, 623, 627
 Victor of Vita 480 and n., 481 and n., 482 and n., 483n.
 Victoria Falls 377, 381
 Victoria Nile *see* Nile
 Victoria, lake 349, 350, 362, 368, 369, 397, 687
 Victorinus 485
 Vigilius, pope 486
Vigna, *Vigna sinensis*, cowpea 71, 312
 Villa Magna 410
 villages, Stone Age–Kumbi Saleh area 666, Tichit 304, 305, 308, 316, Uitkomst 395; permanent 82, 309; satellite 85; temporary 394
 Congo forest 404; Egypt 442, 547; North-West Africa 463, 471, 489; Nubia 556, 570, 572, 584
 Vindicianus, proconsul 474
 vines, vineyards 313, 442, 484
 'violet' style 570
 Virgil 483
 Virgin Mary 435, 436, 575; *see also Theotokos*
 Visigothic kingdom (Spain) 513, 516
 Visscher, F. de 696
 vizier (*wazir*) 527, 596, 612, 621, 632, 634, 635
Voandzeia subterranea, earth pea 312
 Vogel, J. O. 382 and n., 384n., 385, 702
 volcanic uplands 687
 Volta basin 673
 Volubilis (= Walila) 189, 199, 203, 209, 451, 454, 484n., 526
 Vonderheyden, M. (ed.) 644
 Vrba, E. S. 14n.
 Vute people 406

 Wad Medani 572
 Wadai 680, 683
 Wadan 291, 637, 638
 Wad ben Naqa 220, 237, 251, 254
 Waḍḍāhiya 504
 wadi, wadi beds 220, 221, 258, 276
 Wadi Abu Dom 219

INDEX

- Wadi 'Allaqi 95, 99, 530, 593, 594, 619
 Wadi Awateib 220, 252, 254
 Wadi Dar'a (? = Lixus r.) 136, 300, 641, 644, 648, 649, 664; to Senegal 292, 293
 Wadi el-Melik 219
 Wadi Guer (Ger r.) 286
 Wadi Habib 448
 Wadi Halfa 68, 233; cemeteries 68
 Wadi Hawad 220
 Wadi Massa *see* Massa
 Wadi Niffis (Oued Nfiss) 554, 555
 Wadi Noun 299
 Wadi Oua Molin 313
 Wadi Saoura 143
 Wadies-Sebu' 573-4
 Wadi Sebou *see* Sebou
 Wadi Tensift-Couz (Couz r.) 299
 Wadi Tumilat 95
 Wadja (= Oudja) 626
 Wagadu 673 and n., 674, 717
 Waggäg b. Zalwi 636, 657, 659, 661, 664
 Waggu (Gambia) stone circles 312n.
 al-Wāhāt (Kharga and Dakhla oases) 592, 632, 650, 651
 Wahb b. Munabbih 680
 Wahibre' (= Ḥa'a'ibre') 96, 97, 111
 Wainwright, C.-A. 222 and n., 325-6, and n.
wala', client-patron relationship 502, 503, 504, 529
 Walata (= Biru) 305, 314, 340, 637, 650; black community 666
wālī (pl. *wulāt*), governor 527; Aswan 566; Egypt 515, 543, 589, 592, 593; North-West Africa 517, 528
 Walid, caliph 512
 Walid II 521, 522
 Walid b. Hishām (= Abū Rikwa, the man with a goatskin water-bottle) 628
 Walila (= Volubilis) 526
 Wallace, H. le R. 696
 wall-paintings: Egypt 220; Nubia 221, 223, 227, 228, 253-4, 259
 walls: town, Sijilmassa 645, Ghana (palace) 668; walled villages 273, 304, 309, 339
 Walsh, P. G. 695
 Wansborough, J. 710, 711
 Waran desert 648
 war-chariots 86, 144, 179, 228 and n., 279, 281-3; 'Ethiopian' 138; Libyan 114, 116, 144, 145, 278, 279, 281-3; Numidian 125
 Wardān 503
 war-elephants 155-6, 168, 173, 181, 184, 697; African elephant 155, 163-4, 167; chariot replacement 125, 144
 Warfajjūma people 522, 523, 531
 warfare, group 85
 Wargla (= Wārqlān) 595, 606, 618, 619, 642, 643, 644, 659
 Wār Jābī b. Rabis 675, 676
 war leaders 339
 Warmington, B. H. 693, 695, 708
 al-Warrāq, Muḥammad b. Yūsuf 652, 653, 666
 warrior, conqueror 291, 633
 Warsaw 714, 715
 warships 125, 184; *see also* fleets
 Washburn S. L. 19n.; and Moore, R. 20n.
 water 26, 31, 33; Sahara and Sahel 489, 648, 666, 668
 water holes 275, 276, 280, 535, 550; holy spring 442; needs 284 and n., 286-7, 290; rights 277; sources, supplies 263, 275, 292, 470; waterskins 284, 291, 318
 watermelon 312, 314
 Wathiq, caliph 538
 'wavy line' tradition 77
waṣīr (vizier) 527, 539, 596
 weapons 34, 53, 86, 247, 270, 277, 532, 617; stone 277, 326; metal 79, 80, 86; copper, bronze 319, 320, 322, 324, 325, 332; iron 324, 325, 326, 332, 361-2, 532
 armour 617; axes 247, 550n.; bows and arrows, archery 59, 65, 67, 138, 145, 283, 532, Nubia 223, 564-5, poisoned 67, arrowheads, stone 59, 65, 326, bronze 320, 321, iron 326, 381, 385; catapults 565; clubs 53, 332; javelins 125, 138; lances 327, 333, 674, lance-heads 320, 333; pikes 247; shields 669; slings 125, 520; 'spades' 550n.; spears, imported iron 375, microlithic 59, thrusting 49, 125, wooden 34, 49, 53, 145; swords 125, 247, 565, 669, imported iron 375
 weavers 322, 616
 wedges 65
 Weeks, K. R. 714
 welding 398
 wells 275, 276, 280, 307, 621, 666, 668; well-digging 641
 Wendorf, F. 58n., 686; and Marks, A. E. 15n., 42n., 58n., 686; and Schild, R. 687; *et al.* 43n.
 Wendt, W. E. 66n.
 Wenig, S. 227 and n., 230 and n., 231, 241 and n.
 West Africa 2, 4, 10, 342, 353, 354; Stone Age 29, 38, 49, 65, 79, 686, 690
 West African centre, *Pennisetum* 311

INDEX

- Westermann, D. 353, 354n., 702
 Western Africa 38, 39
 Western Central Africa 342, 397–406
 Western Desert 86
 Western Enclosure, Zimbabwe 387
 Western Rift 397, 403, 404
 wheat 9, 78, 313, 314, 373, 649, 651
 wheels, wheeled vehicles 279, 280; *see also* chariots
 White, T. 52n.
 white dynasties, Sudan 673, 676, 683
 White Fort (citadel at Memphis) 99, 102
 White Monastery 433n., 439, 442
 White Nile 222, 259; Blue Nile confluence 266
 White Volta 331
 Wiesman, H. (ed.) 433n.
 Wiet, G. (ed.) 567n., 590n., 708, 711
 wildebeeste 39, 60
 wildfowl 57, 77
 Willcocks and Craig 704
 Willcox, A. R. 690
 Willett, F. 686
 Williams, Denis 334 and n., 692
 Wilson, Monica 376 and n.; and Thompson, Leonard (ed.) 376n., 395n., 397n.
 Wilton rock-shelter 689; Wilton culture, complex 64, 65, 367
 windbreaks 52
 Windhoek 52
 winds: Atlantic 292–3, 296, 297; Indian Ocean (monsoon) 196, 293, 295, 297
 wine 94, 124, 138, 155, 299, 373, 567, 570
 winter rainfall belt 14, 63
 wire-drawing 398
 Wiseman, D. J. 691
 Witkrans 52
 Witwatersrand 395
 Wolof 677
 Wolpoff, M. H. 24n.
 wood boxes 270; construction 262, 278; fuel 333, 334; sickles 307
 woodland, *Brachystegia* 65, 67, 380; deciduous 14, 38, 48, 49; Mediterranean 60
 woodlands, dry, light 342, 343, 344, 352; damp, dense 343, 344, 348; woodland/savanna mosaic 352
 Woodward, E. L. 705
 woodworking 49, 277; tools 307
 wool 155, 550, 616; -workers 616
 Wrigley, C. 733
 writing, writing systems 574, 577; *see also* alphabet
 Egyptian demotic 256, 257; Ethiopian 266; Meroitic 'cursive' 254, 255
 Wulsin, F. R. 694
 Wüstenfeld, F. (ed.) 638n., 680n.
 X-group (= Ballana) 269, 559, 560, 564
 xenophobia 96–7, 102
 Xerxes 100, 101, 288, 296, 297, 326
 Xion r. 137, 138
 Yaddū b. Ya'lā 626
 Yafrān *see* Bānū Ifrān
 Yagala 332
 Yahyā II (Faz) 555
 Yahyā IV 606
 Yahyā b. 'Alī b. Ḥamdūn 624, 625, 628
 Yahyā b. Ibrāhīm 654, 655, 656, 657, 660, 676
 Yahyā b. 'Umar (Lamtūna) 662
 Yakoma 405
 Ya'lā al-Ifrānī, governor 614
 Yam (? = Darfur) 276
 yam (*Dioscorea*) 10, 81, 312, 314, 315; Asian 351, 402; wild 346
 Yannū b. 'Umar al-Hājj 655n.
 Yao (Sahara) 335
 Ya'qūb b. Killīs 613, 622
 Ya'qūbī (Jacobite, Coptic) Church 495
 al-Ya'qūbī 708, 709; on Anbiya 651 and n.; on Egypt 536, 590 and n., 591; on Fezzan 638, 643; on Ghust, Awdaghust 313, 554, 616, 649, 655 and n.; on North-West Africa 510 and n., 525, 595, 596, 715; on Ṣanhāja 666; on Sudan kingdoms 667 and n., 716; on Zaghāwa 554, 616
 Yāqūt 638n., 677n., 680n., 681n.
 Yarasnī 671
 Yārjūkh 592, 593
 al-Yasa' b. Abū'l-Qāsim 645
 Yaṭṭūfat, brother of Maṣṣūr 626, 627
 Yazīd b. 'Abd Allah 589, 590, 591
 Yazīd b. Abī Muslim 512, 517, 518
 Yazīd b. Ḥatīm al-Muḥallabī 524, 526, 528, 532, 544
 al-Yāzūrī, vizier 634, 635, 636
 Yeha 262
 Yelwa 331
 Yemen, Yemenis (s. Arabians) 262, 515, 600, 625, 634, 679
 Yesbekheamani, king 231, 257
 York 501
 Yoruba 330
 Yoyotte, J. 278n.
 Yūnus, prophet 555
 Yūsuf b. 'Abd Allah al-Kātib 625
 Yūsuf Fadl Ḥasan 558 and n.
 Zab 524, 528, 535, 602, 606, 611, 626, 627, 628; people 596, 603, 610
 Zabbān b. 'Abd al-'Azīz 504
 Zacharias Scholasticus 439

INDEX

- Zāfūn 659
 Zaghāwa 275, 680–3, 716
 Zaīre 62, 632, 687, 702; eastern 362, 364, 366; north-eastern 403–4, 687, *see also* Kivu: southern 374, 384, 397–8, 400, 401
 Zaīre r. (lower) 687; *see also* Congo r.
 Zakaria, king (Nubia) 577
 Zakaria III 575
 Zakaria, son of George I 578, 581–2
 Zakarias, son of king Merkurios 569
 Zama 186; battle 173, 181
 Zambezi r. 61, 297, 386; middle 383, 384; upper 61, 382, 383, 385, 688; area south of 47, 297, 383, 395, 396
 Zambia 62, 65, 378, 382, 401, 408, 688, 690, 702; Early Iron Age 374, 376, 383, 384, 386, 388, 394, 408; central 380, 394, 388; eastern 386, 388; northern 14, 80, 376, 384, 688; southern 384, 387, 408
 Zambia Wilton 65
 Zanāta 605, 623, 625, 626, 630, 632, 644; allies 606, 647; chiefs, dynasties 629, 630, 648, 663, 664; 'nation' 628; traders 619, 652
 Zande people 404, 405, 406
 Zanj: king of 392, 409, 680; rebellion, war 592, 593, 597, 599
 Zanzibar 196, 300; Channel 373
 Zawila town, land 523, 638, 643, 646, 681; agriculture 313; Islam 643; routes 525, 643, 644; rulers 617
 Zebgiret island 155
 zebra 51, 58, 316
 zebu cattle (*Bos indicus*) 316, 317
 Zeekogat 52
 Zemmour 280
 Zeno, emperor 440, 441, 442, 483n., 491
 Zenobia, queen 206
 Zeugitana 208, 481
 Zeuner, F. E. 700, 701
 Zeus Ammon 115, 116, 150, 693
 Zidayat Allah I (Ifriqiya) 534, 539, 544, 553
 Zidayat Allah II 594
 Zidayat Allah III 601n., 602, 603
 Zilalsan, *sufes* 178, 179
 Zimbabwe 387, 390, 408, 409; Acropolis 387, 390; culture, tradition 390, 392; kingdom 392, 407
 Ziri b. 'Aṭīya 625, 626, 627; son 627
 Ziri b. Manād 606, 611, 614, 623
 Zirids 623–33, 648, 715; aristocracy 635; historians 599n., 625; piracy 634; religious affiliation 631, 632; *sultan*, emir 626, 636, 657; troops 627, 639
 Ziwa 380, 383, 388; *see also under* pottery
 Ziwsa, C. (ed.) 462n., 465n.
 Ziz r. 649
 Zoilus, patriarch 447
 zoomorphic deities 145; decorations (pottery) 570
 Zoroastrians 502
 Zoscales, lake 264
 Zosimus, pope 478
 Zotenburg, A. (ed. and transl.) 708
 Zoutspansberg range 393
 Zughba (Banū Hilāl) 632, 633, 635
zūhd, asceticism 657
 al-Zuhri (al-Zouhri) 332 and n., 651n., 659 and n., 718
 Zuila 486
 Zwai, lake 687
 Zyhlarz, E. 256n., 714